

Veritas™ Cluster Server 6.0.1 Bundled Agents Reference Guide - AIX

Veritas Cluster Server Bundled Agents Reference Guide

The software described in this book is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of the agreement.

Product version: 6.0.1

Document version: 6.0.1 Rev 2

Legal Notice

Copyright © 2015 Symantec Corporation. All rights reserved.

Symantec, the Symantec Logo, the Checkmark Logo, Veritas, Veritas Storage Foundation, CommandCentral, NetBackup, Enterprise Vault, and LiveUpdate are trademarks or registered trademarks of Symantec Corporation or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

The product described in this document is distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying, distribution, and decompilation/reverse engineering. No part of this document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Symantec Corporation and its licensors, if any.

THE DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID. SYMANTEC CORPORATION SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION. THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENTATION IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE.

The Licensed Software and Documentation are deemed to be commercial computer software as defined in FAR 12.212 and subject to restricted rights as defined in FAR Section 52.227-19 "Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights" and DFARS 227.7202, "Rights in Commercial Computer Software or Commercial Computer Software Documentation", as applicable, and any successor regulations. Any use, modification, reproduction release, performance, display or disclosure of the Licensed Software and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be solely in accordance with the terms of this Agreement.

Symantec Corporation
350 Ellis Street
Mountain View, CA 94043

<http://www.symantec.com>

Technical Support

Symantec Technical Support maintains support centers globally. Technical Support's primary role is to respond to specific queries about product features and functionality. The Technical Support group also creates content for our online Knowledge Base. The Technical Support group works collaboratively with the other functional areas within Symantec to answer your questions in a timely fashion. For example, the Technical Support group works with Product Engineering and Symantec Security Response to provide alerting services and virus definition updates.

Symantec's support offerings include the following:

- A range of support options that give you the flexibility to select the right amount of service for any size organization
- Telephone and/or Web-based support that provides rapid response and up-to-the-minute information
- Upgrade assurance that delivers software upgrades
- Global support purchased on a regional business hours or 24 hours a day, 7 days a week basis
- Premium service offerings that include Account Management Services

For information about Symantec's support offerings, you can visit our website at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/index.jsp

All support services will be delivered in accordance with your support agreement and the then-current enterprise technical support policy.

Contacting Technical Support

Customers with a current support agreement may access Technical Support information at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/contact_techsupp_static.jsp

Before contacting Technical Support, make sure you have satisfied the system requirements that are listed in your product documentation. Also, you should be at the computer on which the problem occurred, in case it is necessary to replicate the problem.

When you contact Technical Support, please have the following information available:

- Product release level
- Hardware information

- Available memory, disk space, and NIC information
- Operating system
- Version and patch level
- Network topology
- Router, gateway, and IP address information
- Problem description:
 - Error messages and log files
 - Troubleshooting that was performed before contacting Symantec
 - Recent software configuration changes and network changes

Licensing and registration

If your Symantec product requires registration or a license key, access our technical support Web page at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/

Customer service

Customer service information is available at the following URL:

www.symantec.com/business/support/

Customer Service is available to assist with non-technical questions, such as the following types of issues:

- Questions regarding product licensing or serialization
- Product registration updates, such as address or name changes
- General product information (features, language availability, local dealers)
- Latest information about product updates and upgrades
- Information about upgrade assurance and support contracts
- Information about the Symantec Buying Programs
- Advice about Symantec's technical support options
- Nontechnical presales questions
- Issues that are related to CD-ROMs or manuals

Support agreement resources

If you want to contact Symantec regarding an existing support agreement, please contact the support agreement administration team for your region as follows:

Asia-Pacific and Japan	customercare_apac@symantec.com
Europe, Middle-East, and Africa	semea@symantec.com
North America and Latin America	supportsolutions@symantec.com

Documentation

Product guides are available on the media in PDF format. Make sure that you are using the current version of the documentation. The document version appears on page 2 of each guide. The latest product documentation is available on the Symantec website.

<https://sort.symantec.com/documents>

Your feedback on product documentation is important to us. Send suggestions for improvements and reports on errors or omissions. Include the title and document version (located on the second page), and chapter and section titles of the text on which you are reporting. Send feedback to:

doc_feedback@symantec.com

For information regarding the latest HOWTO articles, documentation updates, or to ask a question regarding product documentation, visit the Storage and Clustering Documentation forum on Symantec Connect.

<https://www-secure.symantec.com/connect/storage-management/forums/storage-and-clustering-documentation>

About Symantec Connect

Symantec Connect is the peer-to-peer technical community site for Symantec's enterprise customers. Participants can connect and share information with other product users, including creating forum posts, articles, videos, downloads, blogs and suggesting ideas, as well as interact with Symantec product teams and Technical Support. Content is rated by the community, and members receive reward points for their contributions.

<http://www.symantec.com/connect/storage-management>

Contents

Technical Support	4
Chapter 1	Introducing Bundled agents 17
	About Bundled agents 17
	Resources and their attributes 18
	Modifying agents and their resources 18
	Attributes 18
	WPAR-aware agents 19
	IMF aware agents 20
	Enabling debug log messages 20
	VCS support for multi-pathing solutions 21
Chapter 2	Storage agents 22
	About the storage agents 22
	DiskGroup agent 22
	Support for online migration for DiskGroup agent 23
	Dependencies for DiskGroup agent 23
	Agent functions for DiskGroup agent 23
	State definitions for DiskGroup agent 25
	Attributes for DiskGroup agent 26
	Resource type definition for DiskGroup agent 29
	Notes for DiskGroup agent 30
	Sample configurations for DiskGroup agent 32
	Debug log levels for DiskGroup agent 32
	DiskGroupSnap agent 32
	Dependencies for DiskGroupSnap agent 33
	Agent functions for DiskGroupSnap agent 34
	State definitions for DiskGroupSnap agent 34
	Attributes for DiskGroupSnap agent 35
	Notes for DiskGroupSnap agent 37
	Resource type definition for DiskGroupSnap agent 41
	Sample configurations for DiskGroupSnap agent 41
	Debug log levels for DiskGroupSnap agent 48
	Volume agent 48
	Dependencies for Volume agent 48

Agent functions for Volume agent	48
State definitions for Volume agent	49
Attributes for Volume agent	49
Resource type definition for Volume agent	50
Sample configuration for Volume agent	50
Debug log levels for Volume agent	50
VolumeSet agent	50
Dependencies for VolumeSet agent	50
Agent functions for VolumeSet agent	51
State definitions for VolumeSet agent	51
Attributes for VolumeSet agent	52
Resource type definition for VolumeSet agent	52
Sample configurations for VolumeSet agent	52
Agent notes for VolumeSet agent	52
Inaccessible volumes prevent the VolumeSet agent from coming online	53
Debug log levels for VolumeSet agent	53
LVMVG agent	53
Dependencies for LVMVG agent	53
Agent functions for LVMVG agent	54
State definitions for LVMVG agent	55
Attributes for LVMVG agent	56
Resource type definition for LVMVG agent	58
Notes for LVMVG agent	58
Sample configuration for LVMVG agent	66
Debug log levels for LVMVG agent	67
Mount agent	67
Dependencies for Mount agent	67
Agent functions for Mount agent	68
State definitions for Mount agent	70
Attributes for Mount agent	71
Resource type definition for Mount agent	76
Notes for Mount agent	77
High availability fire drill	78
VxFS file system lock	78
IMF usage notes	79
IPv6 usage notes	79
Bringing a Mount resource online in the WPAR	80
Selecting the attribute values for a Mount resource for the WPAR's root file system for NFS mounts	80
Support for namefs file system	80
Taking a group with the Mount resource offline can take several minutes if the file system is busy	82

Example 1	82
Example 2	82
Example 3	83
Enabling Level two monitoring for the Mount agent	83
Sample configurations for Mount agent	83
Debug log levels for Mount agent	84
Chapter 3	
Network agents	85
About the network agents	85
Agent comparisons	85
IP agent	87
High availability fire drill for IP agent	87
Dependencies for IP agent	88
Agent functions for IP agent	88
State definitions for IP agent	88
Attributes for IP agent	89
Resource type definition for IP agent	90
Sample configurations for IP agent	91
Debug log levels for IP agent	91
NIC agent	92
High availability fire drill for NIC agent	92
Dependencies for NIC agent	92
Agent functions for NIC agent	93
State definitions for NIC agent	93
Attributes for NIC agent	94
Resource type definition for NIC agent	95
Sample configurations for NIC agent	96
IPv6 configuration for NIC agent	96
Debug log levels for NIC agent	97
IPMultiNIC agent	97
Dependencies for IPMultiNIC agent	97
Agent functions for IPMultiNIC agent	98
State definitions for IPMultiNIC agent	98
Attributes for IPMultiNIC agent	99
Resource type definition for IPMultiNIC agent	100
Sample configuration: IPMultiNIC and MultiNICA	100
Debug log levels	101
MultiNICA agent	101
Dependencies for MultiNICA agent	102
Agent function for MultiNICA agent	102
State definitions for MultiNICA agent	103
Attributes for MultiNICA agent	103

Resource type definition for MultiNICA agent	106
Notes for MultiNICA agent	107
Sample configurations for MultiNICA agent	107
Debug log levels for MultiNICA agent	109
About the IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB agents	109
Checklist to ensure the proper operation of MultiNICB	109
IPMultiNICB agent	110
Dependencies for IPMultiNICB agent	110
Requirements for IPMultiNICB	111
The haipswitch utility for IPMultiNICB agent	111
Agent functions for IPMultiNICB agent	111
State definitions for IPMultiNICB agent	112
Attributes for IPMultiNICB agent	112
Resource type definition for IPMultiNICB agent	114
Sample configurations for IPMultiNICB agent	115
Debug log levels for IPMultiNICB agent	115
MultiNICB agent	116
The haping utility for MultiNICB agent	116
Dependencies for MultiNICB agent	116
Agent functions for MultiNICB agent	117
State definitions for MultiNICB agent	117
Attributes for MultiNICB agent	117
Resource type definition for MultiNICB agent	121
Trigger script for MultiNICB agent	121
Sample configurations for MultiNICB agent	122
Debug log levels for MultiNICB agent	123
DNS agent	123
Dependencies for DNS agent	123
Agent functions for DNS agent	124
State definitions for DNS agent	125
Attributes for DNS agent	126
Resource type definition for DNS agent	132
Agent notes for DNS agent	132
Sample configurations for DNS agent	137
Debug log levels for DNS agent	139
Chapter 4	
File share agents	140
About the file service agents	140
NFS agent	140
Dependencies for NFS agent	141
Agent functions for NFS agent	141
State definitions for NFS agent	142

Attributes for NFS agent	142
Resource type definition for NFS agent	143
Notes for NFS agent	143
Sample configurations for NFS agent	144
Debug log levels for NFS agent	144
NFSRestart agent	145
Dependencies for NFSRestart agent	145
Agent functions for NFSRestart agent	146
State definitions	147
Attributes for NFSRestart agent	148
Resource type definition for NFSRestart agent	148
Notes for NFSRestart agent	149
Sample configurations for NFSRestart agent	150
Debug log levels for NFSRestart agent	151
Share agent	151
Dependencies for Share agent	151
Agent functions for Share agent	152
State definitions for Share agent	152
Attributes for Share agent	153
Resource type definition for Share agent	153
Notes for Share agent	153
Sample configurations for Share agent	154
Debug log levels for Share agent	154
About the Samba agents	154
The Samba agents	154
Before using the Samba agents	155
Supported versions for Samba agents	155
Notes for configuring the Samba agents	155
SambaServer agent	156
Dependencies for SambaServer agent	156
Agent functions for SambaServer agent	156
State definitions for SambaServer agent	157
Attributes for SambaServer agent	157
Resource type definitions for SambaServer agent	159
Sample configurations for SambaServer agent	159
Debug log levels for SambaServer agent	160
SambaShare agent	160
Dependencies for SambaShare agent	160
Agent functions for SambaShare agent	160
State definitions for SambaShare agent	161
Attributes for SambaShare agent	161
Resource type definition for SambaShare agent	161
Sample configuration for SambaShare agent	162

	Debug log levels for SambaShare agent	162
	NetBios agent	162
	Dependencies for NetBios agent	162
	Agent functions for NetBios agent	163
	State definitions for NetBios agent	163
	Attributes for NetBios agent	164
	Resource type definition for NetBios agent	166
	Sample configuration for NetBios agent	166
	Debug log levels for NetBios agent	166
Chapter 5	Service and application agents	167
	About the services and applications agents	167
	Apache HTTP server agent	167
	Dependencies	168
	Agent functions	169
	State definitions	169
	Attributes	170
	Resource type definition	174
	Apache HTTP server notes	175
	Sample configurations	177
	Application agent	180
	High availability fire drill for Application agent	180
	Dependencies for Application agent	181
	Agent functions for Application agent	181
	State definitions for Application agent	184
	Attributes for Application agent	184
	Resource type definition for Application agent	187
	Notes for Application agent	188
	Sample configurations for Application agent	190
	Debug log levels for Application agent	191
	CoordPoint agent	191
	Coordination Point server as a coordination point	191
	SCSI-3 based disk as a coordination point	192
	Dependencies	192
	Agent functions	192
	State definitions	193
	Attributes	194
	Resource type definition	194
	Notes for the CoordPoint agent	194
	Sample configuration	195
	Debug log levels	196
	Process agent	196

High availability fire drill for Process agent	197
Dependencies for Process agent	197
Agent functions for Process agent	197
State definitions for Process agent	198
Attributes for Process agent	198
Resource type definition for Process agent	199
Usage notes for Process agent	199
Sample configurations for Process agent	199
Debug log levels for Process agent	200
ProcessOnOnly agent	200
Dependencies	201
Agent functions	201
State definitions	201
Attributes	202
Resource type definition	202
ProcessOnOnly agent usage notes	203
Sample configurations	203
Debug log levels	203
WPAR agent	203
Dependencies	204
Agent functions	204
Attributes	205
Resource type definition	206
WPAR agent notes	207
Debug log levels	207
MemCPUAllocator agent	208
Dependencies	208
Agent functions	208
Attributes	209
Resource type definition	210
MemCPUAllocator agent notes	211
Debug log levels	215
LPAR agent	215
Dependencies for LPAR agent	216
Agent functions for LPAR agent	216
Required attributes for LPAR agent	217
Optional attributes for LPAR agent	217
Group attribute for LPAR agent	218
System attribute for LPAR agent	218
Resource type definition for LPAR agent	219
Notes for LPAR agent	219
Debug log levels for LPAR agent	220

Chapter 6	Infrastructure and support agents	221
	About the infrastructure and support agents	221
	NotifierMngr agent	221
	Dependency	222
	Agent functions	222
	State definitions	222
	Attributes	222
	Resource type definition	225
	Sample configuration	226
	Debug log levels	228
	Proxy agent	228
	Dependencies	228
	Agent functions	229
	Attributes	229
	Resource type definition	230
	Sample configurations	230
	Debug log levels	231
	Phantom agent	231
	Dependencies	232
	Agent functions	232
	Resource type definition	232
	Sample configurations	232
	RemoteGroup agent	233
	Dependency	234
	Agent functions	234
	State definitions	234
	Attributes	235
	Resource type definition	240
	Debug log levels	240
Chapter 7	Testing agents	241
	About the testing agents	241
	ElifNone agent	241
	Dependencies for ElifNone agent	241
	Agent function for ElifNone agent	242
	State definitions for ElifNone agent	242
	Attributes for ElifNone agent	242
	Resource type definition for ElifNone agent	243
	Sample configuration for ElifNone agent	243
	Debug log levels for ElifNone agent	243
	FileNone agent	243
	Dependencies for FileNone agent	243

Agent functions for FileNone agent	244
State definitions for FileNone agent	244
Attribute for FileNone agent	244
Resource type definition for FileNone agent	245
Sample configuration for FileNone agent	245
Debug log levels for FileNone agent	245
FileOnOff agent	245
Dependencies for FileOnOff agent	245
Agent functions for FileOnOff agent	246
State definitions for FileOnOff agent	246
Attribute for FileOnOff agent	247
Resource type definition for FileOnOff agent	247
Sample configuration for FileOnOff agent	247
Debug log levels for FileOnOff agent	247
FileOnOnly agent	247
Dependencies for FileOnOnly agent	247
Agent functions for FileOnOnly agent	248
State definitions for FileOnOnly agent	248
Attribute for FileOnOnly agent	249
Resource type definition for FileOnOnly agent	249
Sample configuration for FileOnOnly agent	249
Debug log levels for FileOnOnly agent	249

Chapter 8	Replication agents	250
	About the replication agents	250
	RVG agent	250
	Dependencies	251
	Agent functions	252
	State definitions	252
	Attributes	252
	Resource type definitions	253
	Sample configurations	253
	RVGPrimary agent	254
	Dependencies	254
	Agent functions	255
	State definitions	256
	Attributes	256
	Resource type definitions	259
	Sample configurations	260
	RVGSnapshot	260
	Dependencies	261
	Agent functions	261

State definitions	261
Attributes	262
Resource type definitions	262
Sample configurations	263
RVGShared agent	263
Dependencies	263
Agent functions	264
State definitions	264
Attributes	265
Resource type definitions	265
Sample configurations	265
RVGLogowner agent	265
Dependencies	266
Agent functions	266
State definitions	267
Attributes	267
Resource type definitions	268
RVGLogowner agent notes	268
Sample configurations	269
RVGSharedPri agent	269
Dependencies	270
Agent functions	270
State definitions	271
Attributes	271
Resource type definitions	272
Sample configurations	272
Index	273

Introducing Bundled agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Bundled agents](#)
- [Resources and their attributes](#)
- [Modifying agents and their resources](#)
- [Attributes](#)
- [WPAR-aware agents](#)
- [IMF aware agents](#)
- [Enabling debug log messages](#)
- [VCS support for multi-pathing solutions](#)

About Bundled agents

Bundled agents are Veritas Cluster Server (VCS) processes that manage resources of predefined resource types according to commands received from the VCS engine, HAD. You install these agents when you install VCS.

A node has one agent per resource type that monitors all resources of that type. For example, a single IP agent manages all IP resources.

When the agent starts, it obtains the necessary configuration information from VCS. The agent then periodically monitors the resources, and updates VCS with the resource status.

Agents can:

- Bring resources online.
- Take resources offline.

- Monitor resources and report state changes.

For a more detailed overview of how agents work, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Resources and their attributes

Resources are parts of a system. They are known by their types, for example: a volume, a disk group, or an IP address. VCS includes a set of resource types. Different attributes define these resource types in the `types.cf` file. Each type has a corresponding agent that controls the resource.

The VCS configuration file, `main.cf`, contains the values for the resource attributes and has an `include` directive to the `types.cf` file.

An attribute's given value configures the resource to function in a specific way. By modifying the value of a resource attribute, you can change the way the VCS agent manages the resource. For example, the IP agent uses the `Address` attribute to determine the IP address to monitor.

Modifying agents and their resources

Use the Cluster Manager (Java Console), Veritas Operations Manager, or the command line to dynamically modify the configuration of the resources managed by an agent.

VCS enables you to edit the `main.cf` file directly. To implement these changes, make sure to restart VCS.

See the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for instructions on how to complete these tasks.

Attributes

Attributes contain data about the cluster, systems, service groups, resources, resource types, and the agent. An attribute has a definition and a value. You change attribute values to configure VCS resources. Attributes are either optional or required, although sometimes attributes that are optional in one configuration might be required in other configurations. Many optional attributes have predefined or default values, which you should change as required.

A variety of internal use only attributes also exist. Do not modify these attributes—modifying them can lead to significant problems for your clusters.

Attributes have type and dimension. Some attribute values can accept numbers, others can accept alphanumeric values or groups of alphanumeric values, while others are simple boolean on/off values.

Table 1-1 Attribute data types

Data Type	Description
string	Enclose strings, which are a sequence of characters, in double quotes (""). Optionally enclose strings in quotes when they begin with a letter, and contains only letters, numbers, dashes (-), and underscores (_). A string can contain double quotes, but the quotes must be immediately preceded by a backslash. In a string, represent a backslash with two backslashes (\\).
integer	Signed integer constants are a sequence of digits from 0 to 9. You can precede them with a dash. They are base 10. Integers cannot exceed the value of a 32-bit signed integer: 2147483647.
boolean	A boolean is an integer with the possible values of 0 (false) and 1 (true).

Table 1-2 Attribute dimensions

Dimension	Description
scalar	A scalar has only one value. This is the default dimension.
vector	A vector is an ordered list of values. Each value is indexed using a positive integer beginning with zero. A set of brackets ([]) denotes that the dimension is a vector. Find the specified brackets after the attribute name on the attribute definition in the types.cf file.
keylist	A keylist is an unordered list of unique strings.
association	An association is an unordered list of name-value pairs. An equal sign separates each pair. A set of braces ({}) denotes that an attribute is an association. Braces are specified after the attribute name on the attribute definition in the types.cf file, for example: str SnmpConsoles{}

WPAR-aware agents

Table 1-3 lists the ContainerOpts attribute default values for resource types. Symantec recommends that you do not modify these values.

Table 1-3 ContainerOpts attribute default values for applications and resource types

Resource Type	RunInContainer	PassCInfo
Application	1	0
IP	0	1
IPMultiNICB	0	1
Mount	0	0
Process	1	0
WPAR	0	1

For more information on using WPARs in your VCS environment, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

IMF aware agents

- Application agent. See “[Application agent](#)” on page 180.
- DiskGroup agent. See “[DiskGroup agent](#)” on page 22.
- Mount agent. See “[Mount agent](#)” on page 67.
- Process agent. See “[Process agent](#)” on page 196.
- WPAR agent. See “[WPAR agent](#)” on page 203.

Enabling debug log messages

To help troubleshoot agent issues, you can enable debug log messages in the agent framework as well as the agents.

To enable agent framework debug log messages:

```
# hatype -modify agent_name LogDbg -add DBG_AGDEBUG DBG_AGINFO
DBG_AGTRACE
```

For example:

```
# hatype -modify Mount LogDbg -add DBG_AGDEBUG DBG_AGINFO DBG_AGTRACE
```

To enable agent-specific debug log messages:

```
# hatype -modify agent_name LogDbg -add debug_log_levels
```

For example:

```
# hatype -modify Mount LogDbg -add DBG_1 DBG_2 DBG_3 DBG_4 DBG_5 DBG_6
```

Alternatively, you can also use the following command:

```
# hatype -modify Mount LogDbg -add 1 2 3 4 5 6
```

Agent-specific debug log level information is specified in the agent's description. For example, for information about the Mount agent, See [“Debug log levels for Mount agent”](#) on page 84.

VCS support for multi-pathing solutions

This section applies to the LVMVG agent only.

VCS supports Symantec Dynamic Multi-Pathing (DMP) that is included as a part of the Storage Foundation and High Availability (SFHA) suite of products. Symantec does not support multi-pathing solutions that are not explicitly listed in the hardware compatibility list (HCL). You can find the HCL on the SORT web site, under the Documentation tab. However, Symantec supports third-party solutions, which are included as a part of the operating systems.

Symantec aims to thoroughly test and support third-party and native solutions, but it is not possible to test all third-party multi-pathing applications. This is because of complex support matrix and a number of potential product combinations. Hence, Symantec does not officially support multi-pathing solutions that are not explicitly listed in the HCL. Also, advanced functionality such as I/O fencing with SCSI3-PGR is only supported with arrays and multi-pathing solutions listed in the HCL and only with Symantec Storage Foundation.

If you are using a third-party multi-pathing solution, Symantec understands your need of keeping data paths redundant and does not insist that you uninstall or disable the solution. Symantec does not consider third-party multi-pathing solutions as invalid and continues to troubleshoot any support issues. However, for persisting support issues related to multi-pathing solutions, you need to contact the multi-pathing vendor.

Storage agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the storage agents](#)
- [DiskGroup agent](#)
- [DiskGroupSnap agent](#)
- [Volume agent](#)
- [VolumeSet agent](#)
- [LVMVG agent](#)
- [Mount agent](#)

About the storage agents

Storage agents monitor shared storage and make shared storage highly available. Storage includes shared disks, disk groups, volumes, and mounts.

DiskGroup agent

The DiskGroup agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) disk groups. This agent uses VxVM commands. You can use this agent to monitor or make disk groups highly available.

When the value of the StartVolumes and StopVolumes attribute is 1, the DiskGroup agent brings the volumes online and takes them offline during the import and deport operations of the disk group.

This agent is IMF-aware and uses asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver for IMF notification. For more information about the Intelligent Monitoring

Framework (IMF) and intelligent resource monitoring, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

For important information on this agent, See “[Notes for DiskGroup agent](#)” on page 30.

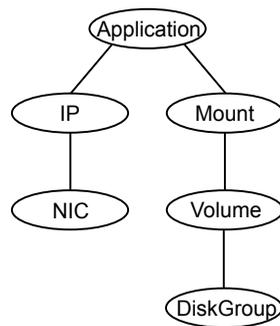
Support for online migration for DiskGroup agent

VCS supports online migration of data from LVM volumes to VxVM volumes in SFHA environment. For more details, refer to the *SFHA solutions Guide*.

Dependencies for DiskGroup agent

The DiskGroup resource does not depend on any other resources.

Figure 2-1 Sample service group that includes a DiskGroup resource



Agent functions for DiskGroup agent

Online	Imports the disk group using the <code>vxldg</code> command.
Offline	Deports the disk group using the <code>vxldg</code> command.
Monitor	Determines if the disk group is online or offline using the <code>vxldg</code> command. The Monitor function changes the value of the VxVM <code>noautoimport</code> flag from off to on. This action allows VCS to maintain control of importing the disk group. The monitor function uses following command to set the <code>noautoimport</code> flag to on.

```
# vxldg -g disk_group set autoimport=no
```

If IMF is enabled for the DiskGroup agent, the resource is monitored asynchronously and any change in the disk group state is immediately sent to the DiskGroup agent for appropriate action.

Clean	Terminates all ongoing resource actions and takes the resource offline—forcibly when necessary.
Info	<p>The DiskGroup info agent function gets information from the Volume Manager and displays the type and free size for the DiskGroup resource.</p> <p>Initiate the info agent function by setting the InfoInterval timing to a value greater than 0.</p> <p>In the following example, the info agent function executes every 60 seconds:</p> <pre># haconf -makerw # hatype -modify DiskGroup InfoInterval 60</pre> <p>The command to retrieve information about the DiskType and FreeSize of the DiskGroup resource is:</p> <pre># hares -value <i>diskgroupres</i> ResourceInfo</pre> <p>Output includes:</p> <pre>DiskType sliced FreeSize 35354136</pre> <p>The value specified is in kilo bytes.</p>

Action	<p>Different action agent functions follow:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ <code>license.vfd</code> Checks for valid Veritas Volume manager license—if one is not found use the <code>vxlicinst</code> utility to install a valid license key.■ <code>disk.vfd</code> Checks if all disks in <code>diskgroup</code> are visible on host—if it fails, check if the path to disks exists from the host and check if LUN masking and zoning are set properly.■ <code>udid.vfd</code> Checks the UDIDs (unique disk identifiers) of disks on the cluster nodes—if it fails, ensure that the disks that are used for the disk group are the same on all cluster nodes.■ <code>verifyplex.vfd</code> Checks if the number of plexes on each site for the Campus Cluster setup are set properly—if it fails, check that the sites, disks, and plexes are set properly for a Campus Cluster setup.■ <code>volinuse</code> Checks if open volumes are in use or file systems on volumes that are mounted outside of VCS configuration. <p>See “High availability fire drill” on page 30.</p>
<code>imf_init</code>	Initializes the agent to interface with Intelligent monitoring framework (IMF). The function runs when the agent starts up.
<code>imf_getnotification</code>	Waits for notification about disk group state changes. The function runs after the agent initializes with IMF. The function waits for notification. Upon receiving notification, the agent takes action on the resource.
<code>imf_register</code>	Registers the resource entities, which the agent must monitor using IMF. The function runs for each resource after the resource goes into a steady state, either online or offline.

State definitions for DiskGroup agent

ONLINE	Indicates that the disk group is imported.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the disk group is not imported.
FAULTED	Indicates that the disk group has unexpectedly deported or become disabled.

UNKNOWN Indicates that a problem exists either with the configuration or the ability to determine the status of the resource. One cause of this state is when I/O fencing is not configured—the cluster level attribute UseFence is not set to "SCSI3" but the Reservation attribute value is "SCSI3".

Attributes for DiskGroup agent

Table 2-1 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
DiskGroup	Name of the disk group that is configured with Veritas Volume Manager. Type and dimension: string-scalar

Table 2-2 Optional attributes

Optional attributes	Description
StartVolumes	If the value of this attribute is 1, the DiskGroup online function starts all volumes belonging to that disk group after importing the group. Note: With VxVM version 5.1.100.0 onwards, if the Veritas Volume Manager default autostartvolumes at system level is set to on, all the volumes of the disk group will be started as a part of the import disk group. Type and dimension: boolean-scalar Default: 1
StopVolumes	If the value of this attribute is 1, the DiskGroup offline function stops all volumes belonging to that disk group before it deports the disk group. Type and dimension: boolean-scalar Default: 1

Table 2-2 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attributes	Description
UmountVolumes	<p>This attribute enables the DiskGroup resource to forcefully go offline even if open volumes are mounted outside of VCS control. When the value of this attribute is 1 and the disk group has open volumes, the following occurs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ The agent attempts to unmount the file systems on open volumes. If required, the agent attempts to kill all VCS managed and un-managed applications using the file systems on those open volumes.■ The agent attempts to forcefully unmount the file systems to close the volumes. <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 0</p>
MonitorReservation	<p>If the value of this attribute is 1, and SCSI-3 fencing is used, the agent monitors the SCSI reservation on the disk group. If the reservation is missing, the Monitor agent function takes the service group containing the service group containing the resource offline.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar Default: 0</p> <p>Note: If the MonitorReservation attribute is set to 0, the value of the clusterwide attribute UseFence is set to SCSI3, and the disk group is imported without SCSI reservation, then the monitor agent function takes the service group containing the resource offline.</p>

Table 2-2 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attributes	Description
PanicSystemOnDGLoss	<p>Determines whether to panic the node if the disk group becomes disabled or monitor program times out. A loss of storage connectivity can cause the disk group to become disabled. VxVM commands not responding properly can cause monitor program to timeout.</p> <p>Note: System administrators may want to set a high value for FaultOnMonitorTimeout to increase system tolerance.</p> <p>This attribute accepts following values 0, 1, 2,3</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ 0 : Do not halt the system■ 1 : halt the system if either disk group goes into disabled state or the disk group resource faults due to monitor timeout■ 2: halt the system if disk group goes into disabled state■ 3: halt the system if disk group resource faults due to monitor timeout <p>If the value of the attribute is 0, and the disk group becomes disabled, the following occurs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ If the cluster has I/O fencing enabled, the DiskGroup resource is marked FAULTED. This state results in the agent attempting to take the service group offline. As part of bringing the DiskGroup resource offline, the agent attempts to deport the disabled disk group. Even if disabled disk group fails to deport, the DiskGroup resource enters a FAULTED state. This state enables the failover of the service group that contains the resource. To fail back the DiskGroup resource, manually deport the disk group after restoring storage connectivity.■ If the cluster does not use I/O fencing, a message is logged and the resource is reported ONLINE. The resource is reported ONLINE so that it does not fail over, which ensures data integrity. <p>Note: The PanicSystemOnDGLoss attribute does not depend on the MonitorReservation attribute.</p> <p>Note: If PanicSystemOnDGLoss is set to non-zero value, the system panic is initiated using <code>sysdumpstart -p</code> command. This command reboots the system.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>

Table 2-2 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attributes	Description
Reservation	<p>Determines if you want to enable SCSI-3 reservation. This attribute can have one of the following three values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ClusterDefault—The disk group is imported with SCSI-3 reservation if the value of the cluster-level UseFence attribute is SCSI3. If the value of the cluster-level UseFence attribute is NONE, the disk group is imported without reservation. SCSI3—The disk group is imported with SCSI-3 reservation if the value of the cluster-level UseFence attribute is SCSI3. NONE—The disk group is imported without SCSI-3 reservation. <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: ClusterDefault</p> <p>Example: "SCSI3"</p>

Table 2-3 Internal attributes

Attribute	Description
tempUseFence	Do not use. For internal use only.
NumThreads	<p>The number of threads that are used within the agent process for managing resources. This number does not include the number of threads that are used for other internal purposes.</p> <p>Setting the NumThreads attribute to a higher value may decrease the time required to go online or the time required to monitor a large number of DiskGroup resources.</p> <p>Type and dimension: static integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p> <p>Note: If there are many DiskGroup resources and if the resources are taking more time to come online, consider increasing the NumThreads attribute to a value greater than 1.</p>

Resource type definition for DiskGroup agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```
type DiskGroup (
```

```
static keylist SupportedActions = { "license.vfd", "disk.vfd", "udid.vfd",  
"verifyplex.vfd", checkudid, numdisks, campusplex, volinuse,  
joindg, splitdg, getvxvminfo }  
static int OnlineRetryLimit = 1  
static str ArgList[] = { DiskGroup, StartVolumes, StopVolumes, MonitorOnly,  
MonitorReservation, tempUseFence, PanicSystemOnDGLoss, UmountVolumes,  
Reservation, ConfidenceLevel }  
static str IMFRegList[] = { DiskGroup, Reservation }  
static int IMF{} = { Mode = 3, MonitorFreq = 5, RegisterRetryLimit = 3 }  
str DiskGroup  
boolean StartVolumes = 1  
boolean StopVolumes = 1  
static int NumThreads = 1  
boolean MonitorReservation = 0  
temp str tempUseFence = INVALID  
int PanicSystemOnDGLoss = 0  
int UmountVolumes = 0  
str Reservation = ClusterDefault  
)
```

Notes for DiskGroup agent

The DiskGroup agent has the following notes:

- [High availability fire drill](#)
- [Using volume sets](#)
- [Setting the noautoimport flag for a disk group](#)
- [Configuring the Fiber Channel adapter](#)
- [Using the DiskGroup agent with IMF](#)

High availability fire drill

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node. These discrepancies might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node.

For DiskGroup resources, the high availability fire drill checks for:

- The Veritas Volume Manager license
- Visibility from host for all disks in the disk group
- The same disks for the disk group on cluster nodes

- Equal number of plexes on all sites for the disk group in a campus cluster setup

For more information about using the high availability fire drill see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Using volume sets

When you use a volume set, set `StartVolumes` and `StopVolumes` attributes of the `DiskGroup` resource that contains a volume set to 1. If a file system is created on the volume set, use a `Mount` resource to mount the volume set.

See the `Mount` agent description for more information.

Setting the `noautoimport` flag for a disk group

VCS requires that the `noautoimport` flag of an imported disk group be explicitly set to true. This value enables VCS to control the importation and deportation of disk groups as needed when bringing disk groups online and taking them offline.

To check the status of the `noautoimport` flag for an imported disk group

```
◆ # vxprint -l disk_group | grep noautoimport
```

If the output from this command is blank, the `noautoimport` flag is set to false and VCS lacks the necessary control.

For VxVM version 5.0 or later on AIX

The `Monitor` function changes the value of the VxVM `noautoimport` flag from off to on. It changes the value instead of taking the service group offline. This action allows VCS to maintain control of importing the disk group.

The following command changes the `autoimport` flag to false:

```
# vxdbg -g disk_group set autoimport=no
```

Configuring the Fiber Channel adapter

You must set FC adapter tunables appropriately to avoid excessive waits for monitor timeouts. One FS adapter tunable is FC error recovery policy.

Refer to the *Veritas™ Dynamic Multi-Pathing Administrator's Guide* for more information.

Refer to the *Fiber Channel adapter's configuration guide* for further information.

Using the DiskGroup agent with IMF

Considerations to use the DiskGroup agent with IMF:

- You can either set the MonitorFreq to 0 or a high value. Setting the value of the MonitorFreq key to a high value ensures that the agent does not run the monitor function frequently. Setting the MonitorFreq key to 0 disables the traditional monitoring while IMF monitoring is in progress. Traditional monitoring is done after receiving the notification for a resource.

However, if the disk group is configured with reservation and value of the MonitorReservation attribute is set to 1, then set the MonitorFreq key value to the frequency at which you want the agent to run the monitor function, to verify the reservation on the disk group.

Sample configurations for DiskGroup agent

DiskGroup resource configuration

Sample configuration of the DiskGroup resource:

```
DiskGroup dg1 (  
    DiskGroup = testdg_1  
)
```

Debug log levels for DiskGroup agent

The DiskGroup agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_5

DiskGroupSnap agent

Use the DiskGroupSnap agent to perform fire drills in a campus cluster. The DiskGroupSnap agent enables you to verify the configuration and data integrity in a Campus Cluster environment with VxVM stretch mirroring. The agent also supports SCSI-3 fencing.

Note: The DiskGroupSnap agent requires the Global Cluster Option (GCO) license enabled on all systems in the cluster.

For more information on fire drills, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

You must define the DiskGroupSnap agent in a separate FireDrill service group which is similar to the Application service group. The FireDrill service group might contain resources similar to the Application service group, for example Mount, Application, and so on.

The FireDrill service group must also contain a resource of type DiskGroupSnap such that the Mount resource depends on the DiskGroupSnap resource. The main DiskGroup must contain multiple sites registered in it with the value of the "siteconsistent" attribute set to on.

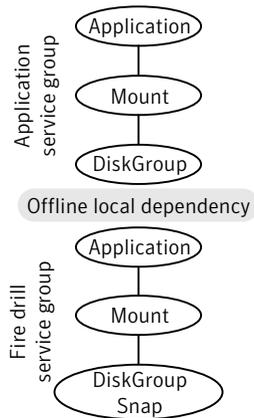
When the DiskGroupSnap agent goes online, the agent detaches one of the sites from the main DiskGroup and imports the detached site on the fire drill host as an independent DiskGroup with a different name. The volumes on the DiskGroup are also imported and mounted with same names on the fire drill host.

The DiskGroupSnap agent provides Gold and Bronze configurations for the fire drill, which can be specified using the agent's FDType attribute. The configuration decides the site to be detached from the DiskGroup for fire drill testing. The Gold configuration is the default option in which the agent selects a site from the DiskGroup that is neither the local VxVM site nor the site on which the DiskGroup is online. With the Gold configuration, you can also specify an alternate site to detach through the agent's FDSiteName attribute. With the Bronze configuration, the agent uses the local VxVM site name as the site to detach from the DiskGroup.

For important information about this agent, See [“Notes for DiskGroupSnap agent”](#) on page 37.

Dependencies for DiskGroupSnap agent

The DiskGroupSnap resource does not depend on any other resources. The service group that contains the DiskGroupSnap agent's resource has an offline local dependency on the application's service group. The offline local dependency is to make sure the fire drill service group and the application service group are not online at the same site at the same time.

Figure 2-2 Sample service group that includes a DiskGroupSnap resource

Agent functions for DiskGroupSnap agent

Online	Verifies that the application's disk group is in a valid campus cluster configuration. It detaches the site that the value of the FDSiteName attribute specifies. It then creates another disk group to be used for the fire drill on the detached site. After the completion of Online function, the agent creates a lock file in the lock directory (<code>/var/VRTSvcs/lock</code>) to indicate that the resource is online.
Offline	This re-attaches the site that the value of the FDSiteName attribute specifies back to the application's disk group. After the completion of Offline function the agent removes the lock file from the lock directory (<code>/var/VRTSvcs/lock</code>) to indicate that the resource is Offline.
Monitor	Monitors the DiskGroupSnap resource by checking the existence of the Lock file in <code>/var/VRTSvcs/lock</code> directory..
Clean	Takes the DiskGroupSnap resource offline.
Open	If the DiskGroupSnap resource has a parent resource that is not ONLINE, then it deletes the online lock file of the DiskGroupSnap resource. This marks the DiskGroupSnap resource as OFFLINE.

State definitions for DiskGroupSnap agent

ONLINE	The DiskGroupSnap resource functions normally.
OFFLINE	The DiskGroupSnap resource is not running.

UNKNOWN	A configuration error exists.
FAULTED	The DiskGroupSnap resource is taken offline unexpectedly outside of VCS control.

Attributes for DiskGroupSnap agent

Table 2-4 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
TargetResName	The name of the DiskGroup resource from the application service group. Type-dimension: string-scalar Example: "dgres"
FDType	Specifies the configuration to be used for the fire drill. The possible values for this attribute are: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Bronze■ Gold (default) The Bronze configuration uses the local host's VxVM site name as the site to be detached from the DiskGroup. This action leaves the DiskGroup vulnerable to site disaster since a copy of the production volume might not be available when the fire drill is in progress. In the Gold configuration there are at least three copies of the parent volume available on different sites, hence, even after detaching one site the volume is not vulnerable to site disaster while the fire drill is in progress.

Table 2-5 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
FDSiteName	<p>The unique VxVM site name tag for the fire drill disks. The value of this attribute is used in conjunction with the FDType attribute and it must be set to one of the sites registered in the main DiskGroup.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When FDType is set to the Bronze configuration, the value of FDSiteName should either be empty or the name of the local host VxVM site for the fire drill host. When FDType is set to the Gold configuration, FDSiteName identifies a site in the DiskGroup to detach as a part of the fire drill. If FDSiteName is left blank, the agent will choose a site to detach based on the DiskGroup configuration. The agent chooses a site name from the DiskGroup which is neither the production server's site name nor the fire drill host's site name. <p>Table 2-6 shows the possible values of the attributes FDType and FDSiteName and the decision taken by the agent.</p>

Consider a configuration where the Production DiskGroup contains three sites: A, B, and C, and the Application service group is online on a node with local VxVM site ID is A. Fire drill is being done on another node Application service group is online on a node where local VxVM site ID is B.

Table 2-6 Example FDType configurations

FDType	Bronze			Gold/Empty		
FDSitename	Empty	B	C	Empty	B	C
Result	Use B as the site to detach and proceed	Detach site B from DiskGroup	Error	Check if there is another site other than A and B and select it. Else, it is an error	Error	Detach site C from the DiskGroup

Table 2-7 Internal attribute

Internal attribute	Description
NumThreads	<p>Number of threads used within the agent process for managing resources. This number does not include threads used for other internal purposes.</p> <p>Do not modify this attribute for this agent.</p> <p>Setting this attribute to a higher value may result in agent function timeouts due to serialization of underlying commands.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>

Notes for DiskGroupSnap agent

The DiskGroupSnap agent has the following notes:

- See [“Fire drill configuration after upgrading VCS”](#) on page 37.
- See [“Configuring the SystemZones attribute for the fire drill service group”](#) on page 37.
- See [“Configuring the FireDrill service group”](#) on page 38.
- See [“Adding the ReuseMntPt attribute to the ArgList attribute for the Mount agent type”](#) on page 38.
- See [“Configuration considerations”](#) on page 39.
- See [“Agent limitations”](#) on page 40.

Fire drill configuration after upgrading VCS

After upgrading VCS from any earlier version to 6.0, delete all resources of type DiskGroupSnap and recreate them again using the new definitions of the attributes. Failure to perform this step might result in an unexpected behavior of the agent.

Configuring the SystemZones attribute for the fire drill service group

You must assign the local system values to the SystemZones attribute of the application’s service group. You set these values so that the service group fails over in the same zone before it tries to fail over across zones.

For more information about campus cluster setup, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

For example, you set up the service group's SystemZones attribute for two zones: 0 and 1. You want the service group on Node_A and Node_B to fail over between the two nodes before it comes up on Node_C and Node_D. The application and its fire drill service group both have the following values for the SystemZones attribute:

```
SystemZones = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 0, Node_C = 1, Node_D = 1 }
```

Configuring the FireDrill service group

In the FireDrill service group, the application-level resources (for example, process resources, application resources, or Oracle resources, and so on) can have the same attribute values in the firedrill service group and the application service group. The reuse of the same values for the attributes can result in VCS reporting the wrong resources as online.

Set the FireDrill type-level attribute to 1 for those types. For example, if the Oracle and Listener resources are configured identically, set the FireDrill attribute for Oracle and Netlsnr to 1:

```
# haconf -makerw
# hatype -modify Oracle FireDrill 1
# hatype -modify Netlsnr FireDrill 1
# haconf -dump -makero
```

Adding the ReuseMntPt attribute to the ArgList attribute for the Mount agent type

If you plan to use a Mount resource in a firedrill service group, you must add the ReuseMntPt attribute to ArgList and set its value to 1.

To add the ReuseMntPt attribute to the ArgList attribute and set its value to 1

- 1 Make the configuration read and write.

```
# haconf -makerw
```

- 2 Add the ReuseMntPt attribute to the ArgList attribute.

```
# hatype -modify Mount ArgList -add ReuseMntPt
```

- 3 Change the value of the ReuseMntPt attribute to 1 for the firedrill's Mount resource.

```
# hares -modify firedrill_mount_resource_name ReuseMntPt 1
```

- 4 Change the value of the ReuseMntPt attribute to 1 for the original Mount resource.

```
# hares -modify original_mount_resource_name ReuseMntPt 1
```

- 5 Make the configuration read only.

```
# haconf -dump -makero
```

Configuration considerations

Keep the following recommendations in mind:

- You must install Veritas Volume Manager 5.1 or later with the FMR license and the Site Awareness license.
- Do not bring the DiskGroupSnap resource online in the SystemZone where the application service group is online.
- Make sure that the firedrill service group and the application service group both use the same values for the SystemZones attribute.
- Do not use Volume resources in the firedrill service group. The DiskGroupSnap agent internally uses the `vxvol` command to start all the volumes in the firedrill disk group.
- In large setups, you may need to tweak the various timer values so that the timers do not time out while waiting for VxVM commands to complete. The timers you need to tweak are the `OfflineTimeout` for the DiskGroupSnap resource and `MonitorInterval` and `ActionTimeout` for the associated DiskGroup resource, for example:

```
# haconf -makerw
# hares -override dgsres OfflineTimeout
# hares -modify dgsres OfflineTimeout 600
# hares -override dgres MonitorInterval
# hares -modify dgres MonitorInterval 1200 (this has to be twice
    the value intended for ActionTimeout below)
# hares -override dgres ActionTimeout
# hares -modify dgres ActionTimeout 600
# haconf -dump -makero
```

- When you create the firedrill service group, in general use the same attribute values that you use in the application service group.

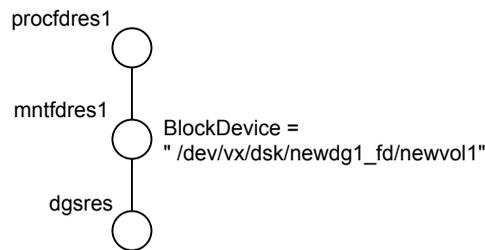
The BlockDevice attribute of the Mount resource changes between the application service group and the fire drill service group. In the BlockDevice path, you must append an `_fd` to the disk group name portion, for example,

`/dev/vx/dsk/newdg1/newvol1` becomes `/dev/vx/dsk/newdg1_fd/newvol1`.

See [Figure 2-3](#) on page 40. shows the changes to resource values for the fire drill service group; note that the Volume resource is not included.

- Before commencing the fire drill, make sure that all the sites registered in the application DiskGroup are in ACTIVE state.

Figure 2-3 Sample resource values for a DiskGroupSnap resource



Agent limitations

The following limitations apply to the DiskGroupSnap agent:

- The DiskGroupSnap agent does not support Volume Sets.
- The DiskGroupSnap agent cannot be used in a Storage Foundation RAC environment.
- The online and offline operations of the DiskGroupSnap resource invokes VCS action entry points to run VxVM commands to detach/reattach the fire drill site. Since VxVM requires that these commands are run on the node where the disk group is imported, the disk group has to be imported on some node in the cluster before these operations.
- Take the fire drill service group offline before you shut down VCS on any node. If you fail to take the fire drill service group offline before you shut down VCS, you must manually reattach the fire drill site to the disk group to continue to perform fire drills.
- Use the enclosures that have the ASL/APM libraries that are supported in the Veritas Volume Manager. To view the supported enclosures, use the `vxddladm listsupport` command.
- Do not switch the Application service group when fire drill is in progress.

Resource type definition for DiskGroupSnap agent

The resource type definition for this agent follows:

```
type DiskGroupSnap (  
  static int ActionTimeout = 120  
  static int MonitorInterval = 300  
  static int NumThreads = 1  
  static str ArgList[] = { TargetResName, FDSiteName, FDType }  
  str TargetResName  
  str FDSiteName  
  str FDType  
)
```

Sample configurations for DiskGroupSnap agent

In [Figure 2-4](#), the Primary site is in the Bronze configuration and the Disaster recovery site is in a Gold configuration.

Since the Primary site does not have dedicated fire drill disks, it is in a Bronze configuration. In the Bronze configuration, you re-purpose the mirror disks in the disaster recovery site to serve as fire drill test disks. The drawback with the Bronze configuration is that if a disk failure occurs when the fire drill is online at the Primary site, it results in a site failure.

The FDSiteName value in a bronze configuration is the VxVM site name. For this configuration, the FDSiteName attribute values for the nodes at the Primary site follow:

```
FDSiteName@Node_A = pri  
FDSiteName@Node_B = pri
```

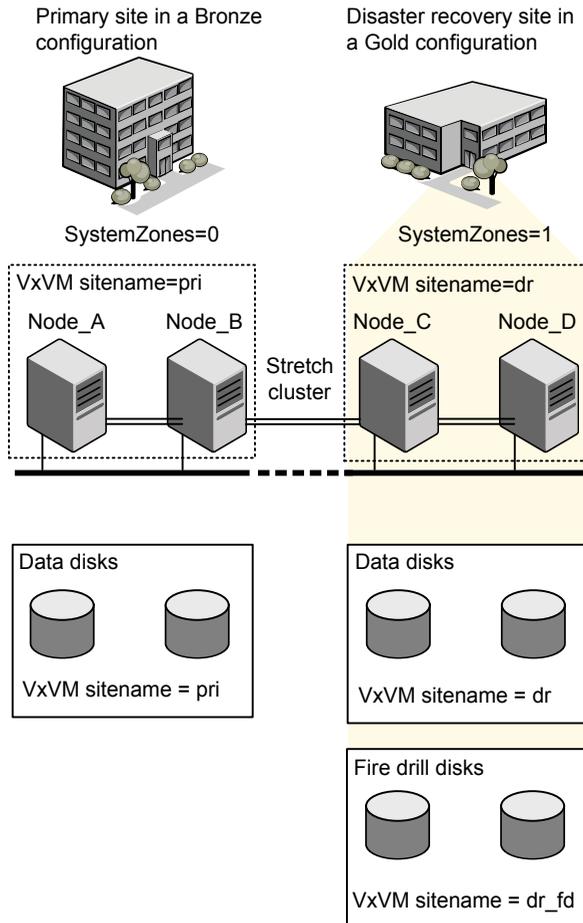
The Disaster Recovery site is in a Gold configuration as it has dedicated fire drill disks at the site. For the FDSiteName attribute, use the VxVM site tag given to the fire drill disks. For this configuration, the FDSiteName attribute values for the nodes at the Disaster recovery site follow:

```
FDSiteName@Node_C = dr_fd  
FDSiteName@Node_D = dr_fd
```

Set values for the SystemZones attribute to zero for Node_A and Node_B, and one for Node_C and Node_D. For example:

```
SystemZones = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 0, Node_C = 1, Node_D = 1 }
```

Figure 2-4 Primary site with the Bronze configuration and the disaster recovery site with the Gold configuration



Typical main.cf configuration for DiskGroupSnap agent

The following sample configuration shows the fire drill's service group and its corresponding application service group. The fire drill's service group follows:

```
group dgfdsg (
  SystemList = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 1, Node_C = 2, Node_D = 3 }
  SystemZones = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 0, Node_C = 1, Node_D = 1 }
)
```

```
DiskGroupSnap dgsres (
  TargetResName = dgres
)

FDtype = "Gold"
  FDSiteName @Node_A = pri
  FDSiteName @Node_B = pri
  FDSiteName @Node_C = dr_fd
  FDSiteName @Node_D = dr_fd
)

Mount mntfdres1 (
  MountPoint = "/dgsfs1"
  BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/newdgl_fd/newvol1"
  FSType = vxfs
  FsckOpt = "-y"
  ReuseMntPt = 1
)

Mount mntfdres2 (
  MountPoint = "/dgsfs2"
  BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/newdgl_fd/newvol2"
  FSType = vxfs
  FsckOpt = "-y"
  ReuseMntPt = 1
)

Process procfres1 (
  PathName = "/usr/bin/ksh"
  Arguments = "/scrib.sh /dgsfs1"
)

Process procfres2 (
  PathName = "/usr/bin/ksh"
  Arguments = "/scrib.sh /dgsfs2"
)

requires group dgsg offline local

mntfdres1 requires dgsres
mntfdres2 requires dgsres
```

```
procfres1 requires mntfdres1
procfres2 requires mntfdres2
```

The application's service group (the actual service group) follows:

```
group dgsg (
    SystemList = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 1, Node_C = 2, Node_D = 3 }
    SystemZones = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 0, Node_C = 1, Node_D = 1 }
)

DiskGroup dgres (
    DiskGroup = newdgl
)

Mount mntres1 (
    MountPoint = "/dgsfs1"
    BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/newdgl/newvol1"
    FSType = vxfs
    FsckOpt = "-y"
    ReuseMntPt = 1
)

Mount mntres2 (
    MountPoint = "/dgsfs2"
    BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/newdgl/newvol2"
    FSType = vxfs
    FsckOpt = "-y"
    ReuseMntPt = 1
)

Process procrs1 (
    PathName = "/usr/bin/ksh"
    Arguments = "/scrib.sh /dgsfs1"
)

Process procrs2 (
    PathName = "/usr/bin/ksh"
    Arguments = "/scrib.sh /dgsfs2"
)

mntres1 requires dgres
mntres2 requires dgres
```

```
procrs1 requires mntres1
procrs2 requires mntres2
```

Sample main.cf of DiskGroupSnap with Oracle resource

The following Oracle configuration has been simplified for presentation within this guide.

```
group fd_oragrp (
    SystemList = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 1 }
    AutoStart = 0
    SystemZones = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 1 }
)

DiskGroupSnap dgres (
    FDSiteName @Node_A = siteA
    FDSiteName @Node_B = siteB
    TargetResName = oradg_res
    FDType = "Bronze"
)

IP fd_oraip (
    Device = en0
    Address = "10.198.95.191"
    NetMask = "255.255.255.0"
)

Mount fd_archmnt (
    FsckOpt = "-y"
    ReuseMntPt = 1
    BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/oradg_fd/archive_vol"
    MountPoint = "/ora_archive"
    FSType = vxfs
)

Mount fd_datamnt (
    FsckOpt = "-y"
    ReuseMntPt = 1
    BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/oradg_fd/data_vol"
    MountPoint = "/ora_data"
    FSType = vxfs
)

NIC fd_oranic (
```

```
        Device = en0
    NetworkHosts = { "10.198.95.1" }
    )

    Netlsnr fd_LSNR (
        Home = "/opt/oracle/ora_home"
        Owner = oracle
    )

    Oracle fd_Ora_01 (
        Owner = oracle
        Home = "/opt/oracle/ora_home"
        Sid = Ora_01
    )

requires group oragrp offline local
fd_LSNR requires fd_Ora_01
fd_LSNR requires fd_oraip
fd_Ora_01 requires fd_archmnt
fd_Ora_01 requires fd_datamnt
fd_archmnt requires dgres
fd_datamnt requires dgres
fd_oraip requires fd_oranic

group oragrp (
    SystemList = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 1 }
    AutoStartList = { Node_A, Node_B }
    SystemZones = { Node_A = 0, Node_B = 1 }
)

    DiskGroup oradg_res (
        DiskGroup = oradg
    )

    IP Node_A4vip (
        Device = en0
        Address = "10.198.95.192"
        Netmask = "255.255.255.0"
    )

    Mount arch_mnt (
        FsckOpt = "-y"
        ReuseMntPt = 1
        BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/oradg/archive_vol"
```

```
MountPoint = "/ora_archive"
FSType = vxfs
)

Mount data_mnt (
  FsckOpt = "-y"
  ReuseMntPt = 1
  BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/oradg/data_vol"
  MountPoint = "/ora_data"
  FSType = vxfs
)

NIC nic_Node_A4vip (
  Device = en0
)

Netlsnr LSNR (
  Home = "/opt/oracle/ora_home"
  Owner = oracle
)

Oracle Ora_01 (
  Owner = oracle
  Home = "/opt/oracle/ora_home"
  Sid = Ora_01
)

Volume arch_vol (
  Volume = archive_vol
  DiskGroup = oradg
)

Volume data_vol (
  Volume = data_vol
  DiskGroup = oradg
)

LSNR requires Ora_01
LSNR requires Node_A4vip
Ora_01 requires arch_mnt
Ora_01 requires data_mnt
arch_mnt requires arch_vol
arch_vol requires oradg_res
data_mnt requires data_vol
```

```
data_vol requires oradg_res
Node_A4vip requires nic_Node_A4vip
```

Debug log levels for DiskGroupSnap agent

The DiskGroupSnap agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1

Volume agent

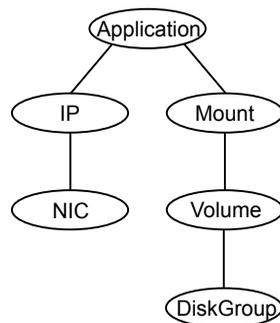
The Volume agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors a Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) volume. Use the agent to make a volume highly available.

Note: Do not use the Volume agent for volumes created for replication.

Dependencies for Volume agent

Volume resources depend on DiskGroup resources.

Figure 2-5 Sample service group that includes a Volume resource



Agent functions for Volume agent

Online	Uses the <code>vxrecover</code> command to start the volume.
Offline	Uses the <code>vxvol</code> command to stop the volume.
Monitor	Attempts to read a block from the raw device interface to the volume to determine if the volume is online, offline, or unknown.

Clean Terminates all ongoing resource actions and takes the resource offline—forcibly when necessary.

State definitions for Volume agent

ONLINE Indicates that the specified volume is started and that I/O is permitted.

OFFLINE Indicates that the specified volume is not started and that I/O is not permitted.

FAULTED Indicates the volume stopped unexpectedly and that I/O is not permitted.

UNKNOWN Indicates that the agent could not determine the state of the resource or that the resource attributes are configured incorrectly.

Attributes for Volume agent

Table 2-8 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
DiskGroup	Name of the disk group that contains the volume. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "DG1"
Volume	Name of the volume from disk group specified in DiskGroup attribute. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "DG1Vol1"

Table 2-9 Internal attribute

Optional attribute	Description
NumThreads	Number of threads used within the agent process for managing resources. This number does not include threads used for other internal purposes. Do not modify this attribute for this agent. Setting this attribute to a higher value may result in agent function timeouts due to serialization of underlying commands. Default: 1

Resource type definition for Volume agent

The resource type definition for this agent follows:

```
type Volume (  
    static int NumThreads = 1  
    static str ArgList[] = { Volume, DiskGroup }  
    str Volume  
    str DiskGroup  
)
```

Sample configuration for Volume agent

The sample configuration for the Volume agent follows:

```
Volume sharedg_vol3 (  
    Volume = vol3  
    DiskGroup = sharedg  
)
```

Debug log levels for Volume agent

The Volume agent uses the following debug log levels:

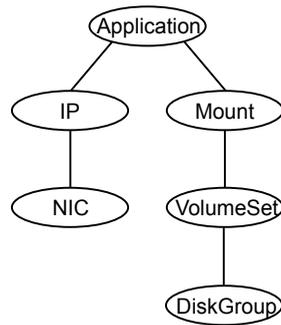
DBG_1, DBG_3, DBG_5

VolumeSet agent

The VolumeSet agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors a Veritas Volume Manager (VxVM) volume set. Use the agent to make a volume set highly available.

Dependencies for VolumeSet agent

VolumeSet resources depend on DiskGroup resources.

Figure 2-6 Sample service group that includes a VolumeSet resource

Agent functions for VolumeSet agent

Online	Uses the vxrecover command to start the volume set.
Offline	Uses the vxvset command to stop the volume set.
Monitor	Attempts to read a block from the raw device interface to the volumes inside the volume set to determine if the volume set is online, offline, or unknown.
Clean	Terminates all ongoing resource actions and takes the resource offline—forcibly when necessary.

State definitions for VolumeSet agent

ONLINE	Indicates that all the volumes in the volume set are started and that I/O is permitted for all the volumes.
OFFLINE	Indicates that at least one of the volume is not started in the volume set and that I/O is not permitted for that volume.
FAULTED	Indicates the volumes that are inside the volume set have stopped unexpectedly and that I/O is not permitted.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent could not determine the state of the resource or that the resource attributes are configured incorrectly.

Attributes for VolumeSet agent

Table 2-10 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
DiskGroup	The name of the disk group that contains the volume set. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "DG1"
VolumeSet	The name of the volume set from the disk group that you specified in the DiskGroup attribute. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "DG1VolSet1"

Resource type definition for VolumeSet agent

```
type VolumeSet (  
    static str ArgList[] = { DiskGroup, VolumeSet }  
    str VolumeSet  
    str DiskGroup  
)
```

Sample configurations for VolumeSet agent

This sections contains sample configurations for this agent.

A configured VolumeSet that is dependent on a DiskGroup resource

The VolumeSet's shared_vset3 resource is configured and is dependent on DiskGroup resource with a shared diskgroup.

```
VolumeSet sharedg_vset3 (  
    VolumeSet = vset3  
    DiskGroup = sharedg  
)
```

Agent notes for VolumeSet agent

This sections contains notes about this agent.

Inaccessible volumes prevent the VolumeSet agent from coming online

The VolumeSet agent does not come online if any volume is inaccessible in its volume set.

To remove a volume from volume set

- ◆ Enter the following commands to remove a volume from a volume set mounted on mountpoint.

```
# fsvoladm remove mountpoint volume_name
# vxvset -g diskgroup rmvol volumeset volume_name
```

Debug log levels for VolumeSet agent

The VolumeSet agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_4

LVMVG agent

The LVMVG agent activates, deactivates, and monitors a Logical Volume Manager (LVM) volume group. The LVMVG agent supports JFS or JFS2. It does not support VxFS. This agent ensures that the ODM is in sync with changes to the volume group, specifically from the last time that the volume group was imported on the system. The LVMVG agent requires that date and time on all cluster nodes should be synchronized.

The LVMVG agent is also capable of ensuring high availability for AIX scalable volume group.

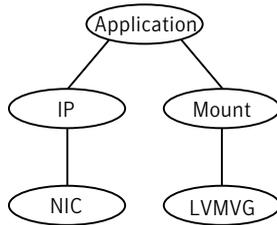
See [“VCS support for multi-pathing solutions”](#) on page 21.

For important information on this agent, refer to:

[Notes for LVMVG agent.](#)

Dependencies for LVMVG agent

No dependencies exist for the LVMVG resource.

Figure 2-7 Sample service group for an LVMVG resource

Agent functions for LVMVG agent

Online	Activates the volume group. The Online agent function expects that the volume group is already imported on the system. If the volume group had been modified on a system where it was previously active, the online agent function detects the modification. It then syncs up the ODM on the system where you want to bring the volume group resource online.
Offline	Deactivates the volume group.
Monitor	Determines the volume group's state (activated or deactivated) and availability for read/write operations.
Clean	Terminates all ongoing resource actions and takes the resource offline, forcibly when necessary.

Action	Different action agent functions follow: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ <code>pv.vfd</code> Checks if all the disks in the volume group are visible on a host. If it fails, check if the path to disks exists from the host and check if LUN masking and zoning are set properly.■ <code>autoon.vfd</code> Checks if the flag to automatically activate volume group on system restart is set to yes. If it fails, set the "auto on" flag of volume group to "no".■ <code>volinuse</code> Checks if open volumes are in use or file systems on volumes that are mounted outside of VCS configuration.■ <code>updatepv</code> Updates the volume group's physical volumes (PV) information on all the other nodes in the cluster. You must run this action whenever there are changes in the disk configuration, such as addition, deletion, or replacement of physical volumes of the volume group. Running this action ensures that the other nodes are updated with the new information, which is used when the agent brings the volume group online.
--------	---

State definitions for LVMVG agent

ONLINE	Indicates that the volume group is activated.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the volume group is deactivated.
FAULTED	Indicates that the volume group has unexpectedly deactivated or deported or been disabled.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that a problem exists either with the configuration or the ability to determine the status of the resource.

Attributes for LVMVG agent

Table 2-11 Required attributes for AIX

Required attribute	Description
MajorNumber	<p>Integer that represents the major number of the volume group. To ensure NFS functions properly, assign the same major number to the volume group on each system in the cluster.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p>
NumThreads	<p>The number of threads that are used within the agent process for managing resources. This number does not include the threads that are used for other internal purposes.</p> <p>This resource type attribute is for internal use only. This value of this attribute must be set to 1.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>
VolumeGroup	<p>Name of the volume group that is configured with LVM.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "testvg1"</p>

Table 2-12 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
GroupName	<p>Attribute used to specify the volume's group.</p> <p>If set, the group's name is applied to the volume group and all of its logical volumes.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: system</p>
ImportvgOpt	<p>Attribute used to specify options for the importvg command.</p> <p>The default option, "n", indicates the volume group is not automatically activated when imported.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: n</p>

Table 2-12 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
Mode	<p>Attribute used to specify permissions for a volume group and its logical volumes.</p> <p>If set, these permissions are applied to the volume group and all of its logical volumes.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: 640</p>
OwnerName	<p>Attribute used to specify the volume owner's name.</p> <p>If set, the owner's name is applied to the volume group and all of its logical volumes.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: root</p>
SyncODM	<p>Integer that specifies whether or not the agent ensures that the ODM is in sync with any changes to the volume group.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 1, the agent ensures that the ODM is in sync with the changes to the volume group in situations where the volume group was modified on another system in the cluster. The sync operation occurs on the system where the agent brings the volume group online.</p> <p>If you run the updatepv action for the volume group, set the value of this attribute to 1 to ensure that the ODM entries are in sync with the changes in the volume group.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 0, the changes to the volume group are independent of the ODM.</p> <p>See “SyncODM Attribute” on page 62.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>
VaryonvgOpt	<p>Attribute used to specify options for the varyonvg command.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>
ModePermSyncFlag	<p>This attribute is deprecated. The agent uses an advanced algorithm to apply the Owner, Group and Permissions for the VG and its volumes. It does not use this attribute anymore.</p>

Resource type definition for LVMVG agent

The resource type definition for this agent follows:

```
type LVMVG (  
    static keylist SupportedActions = { "pv.vfd", numdisks,  
    "autoon.vfd", volinuse, updatepv }  
    static int NumThreads = 1  
    static str ArgList[] = { VolumeGroup, MajorNumber, OwnerName,  
    GroupName, Mode, ImportvgOpt, VaryonvgOpt, SyncODM,  
    ModePermSyncFlag }  
    str VolumeGroup  
    int MajorNumber  
    str OwnerName  
    str GroupName  
    str Mode  
    str ImportvgOpt = n  
    str VaryonvgOpt  
    int SyncODM = 1  
    int ModePermSyncFlag = 1  
)
```

Notes for LVMVG agent

The LVMVG agent for AIX has the following notes:

- [Disks renamed after device renaming](#)
- [About the updatepv action](#)
- [LVMVG support in a VIO server environment](#)
- [Deactivation failure using the varyoffvg command on losing storage connectivity](#)
- [LVMVG Agent Supports JFS or JFS2](#)
- [Volume group needs to be imported](#)
- [Varyonvg options](#)
- [SyncODM Attribute](#)
- [Major Numbers](#)
- [Autoactivate Options](#)
- [LVMVG agent support for the Subsystem Device Driver \(SDD\)](#)
- [LVMVG agent support for the Hitachi's HiCommand Dynamic Link Manager \(HDLM\)](#)

- [LVMVG agent support for the EMC PowerPath](#)
- [The hadevice utility](#)
- [Removing a ghost disk from VxVM control](#)

Disks renamed after device renaming

If the disks used to create the volume group are renamed after device renaming, you need to export and re-import the volume group for the LVMVG type resources.

About the updatepv action

The updatepv action updates the volume group's physical volumes (PV) information on all the other nodes in the cluster.

If a volume group's disk configuration is changed on a node, the updated information is not automatically propagated to other nodes of the cluster, and thus some or all of the ODM entries on those nodes become stale. This may cause the online operation of the volume group resource to fail.

You must run this action whenever there are changes in the disk configuration, such as addition, deletion, or replacement of physical volumes of the volume group. Running this action ensures that the other nodes are updated with the new information, which is used when the agent brings the volume group online. Use the following command to run this action.

```
# hares -action res_name updatepv -sys system_name
```

where `system_name` is the name of the node on which the disks were added to or removed from the volume group.

Running this action sends the updated physical volume information from the local node to all the other nodes. This information is stored in the file `/var/VRTSvcs/log/tmp/resource_name.volume_group_name.pvid` on all the nodes. If this file is present on that node, and if the SyncODM attribute is set to 1, then the online entry point uses the PVIDs from the file, exports the volume group, breaks the reservations on all these disks, and uses any one PVID to re-import the volume group. The file is deleted from that node after the volume group is successfully brought online on that node and the ODM is synchronized.

The SyncODM attribute must be set to 1 if the updatepv action has been executed for that volume group.

To ensure the high availability of the LVMVG resource, you must run the updatepv action immediately after adding, deleting, or replacing the physical volumes in the volume group. When the new disks are added or replaced in the volume group, these disks must be visible and have same PVID on all the cluster nodes.

You must run the `updatepv` action again for the nodes that were down when `updatepv` was last run.

Note: The `updatepv` action does not support the GCO environment.

LVMVG support in a VIO server environment

The LVMVG agent supports volume groups created with virtual SCSI devices.

AIX and VIOS must be at the following required levels:

- The AIX operating system level must be AIX 6.1 TL5 or later and AIX 7.1 TL0 or later.
For more information about supported AIX versions, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Installation Guide*.
- The VIOS version must be VIOS 1.3 Fix Pack 8.1 or later.

Deactivation failure using the `varyoffvg` command on losing storage connectivity

In certain circumstances, the `varyoffvg` command does not deactivate all the volume groups on a node. This failure can prevent the failback of the LVMVG resource.

In situations where storage connectivity is lost, the LVMVG resources fails over. Failback for the LVMVG resource requires the deactivation of the volume groups on the node that lost its connectivity to storage. VCS uses the `varyoffvg` command to deactivate the volume groups. The LVMVG resource cannot fail back, however, when deactivation is unsuccessful.

When the volume group loses its storage connectivity, the clean function executes the `varyoffvg` command. Deactivation using the `varyoffvg` command can fail, however, if the volume group is busy.

Criteria that can cause this failure can include:

- when the volume group has pending I/O operations, or
- when an application or upper-level resources in the resource dependency tree uses the volume group.

To overcome this deactivation failure, a post offline trigger has been added to issue the `varyoffvg` command. A side effect of the post offline trigger is that you must set the value of the `OnlineRetryLimit` attribute to 0.

Following steps are performed to enable the `lvmvg_postoffline` trigger:

- 1 Set the `POSTOFFLINE` value in `TriggersEnabled` attribute of service group containing the LVMVG resource.
- 2 Install the `lvmvg_postoffline` trigger script from the sample triggers directory into the triggers directory:

```
# cp /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/sample_triggers/VRTSvcs/lvmvg_postoffline  
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/triggers/postoffline
```

Change the file permissions to make it executable.

After the restoration of storage connectivity, you must ensure that the volume groups are deactivated on the node. You can then clear the fault on the resources. If you find active volume groups, deactivate them using the `varyoffvg` command.

The LVMVG resource must be the bottom-most resource in the resource dependency tree in the service group. A resource under the LVMVG resource can potentially fail to go offline if the volume group's deactivation fails.

LVMVG Agent Supports JFS or JFS2

The LVMVG agent supports JFS and JFS2 file systems. It does not support VxFS.

Volume group needs to be imported

The LVMVG agent relies on the ODM to find out the names of the disk devices that a volume group is created on. Unless a volume group is imported on the system, the ODM on that system does not contain any information about that volume group. Therefore, you must import the volume group on all the systems in the group's `SystemList` for the LVMVG agent to function properly.

For example, the volume groups (`vg1` and `vg2`) must be imported on the specified systems (`sysA` and `sysB`).

See [“Notes for LVMVG agent”](#) on page 58.

Varyonvg options

By default, the agent checks the state of the disk devices underneath the volume group. If the disk device is in a defined state, the agent resets it to an available state. You can use the `VaryonvgOpt` attribute to change this default behavior.

You can tell the agent not to check for the state of the disk devices. Set the `VaryonvgOpt` attribute in the `main.cf` file to a value of `"u"`. This option to the `varyonvg` command ensures that the disks underneath the volume group are not reserved when the volume group is activated.

Note: When you activate a volume group with the "u" option, ghost disks are not created. Therefore, you do not have to reset disks for these volume groups.

SyncODM Attribute

The LVMVG agent ensures that the ODM is in sync with any changes to the volume group since it was last imported on the system. This sync happens only if this attribute is set to 1. The agent uses the volume group's timestamp ODM entry to get the time when the volume group was last imported on the system.

The sync operation occurs when the timestamp value in the volume group's timestamp ODM entry is older than the time stamp value in the volume group's descriptor area. The timestamp value in the VGDA area of a volume group is updated after creating or deleting logical volumes, and adding or removing physical volumes. The sync operation also occurs if PVID file is found on the node and SyncODM attribute is set to 1. The PVID file is present if updatepv action has been executed. In this case the sync operation is performed without comparing the time stamp values.

Major Numbers

If a file system on a volume group is shared for NFS, make sure that the volume group is imported with the same major number. The volume group is imported on all of the nodes in the cluster.

To view a list of available major numbers on the system, enter the `lvfstmajor` command. For example:

```
# lvfstmajor
49, 60 ...
```

To import volume group `vg00` with major number 60, enter:

```
# importvg -V 60 -y vg00 hdisk3
```

To view the major number that is assigned to a volume group, use the `ls` command with the `-l` option. For example:

```
# ls -l /dev/vg00
crw-r----- 1 root      system    60,  0 Apr  2 16:05 /dev/vg00
```

Assign the same major number to the volume group on each system in the cluster. Specify this major number in the MajorNumber attribute of the LVMVG configuration.

Note: Do not specify the V option in the ImportvgOpt attribute string, the agent specifies this option.

Autoactivate Options

The "Concurrent Capable" options for the `importvg` and `mkvg` commands that are used with HACMP are not required for VCS. If an LVM volume group is placed under VCS control, the autoactivate options should be turned off. Do this using SMIT or through the command line.

From SMIT, set the following field values when creating or altering the volume group:

```
Activate volume group AUTOMATICALLY          no
      at system restart?
Create VG Concurrent Capable?                 no
Auto-varyon in Concurrent Mode?              no
```

From the command line, to view the current value for these fields, use the `lsattr` command.

For example:

```
# lsattr -El vg00
vgserial_id 0001632f00004c00000000ee092b3bd8 N/A False
auto_on      y                               N/A True
conc_capable n                               N/A True
conc_auto_on n                               N/A True
timestamp    3ceff3390a8b1379                N/A True
```

From the command line, to change the value for these fields, use the `chvg` command.

To change the value of `auto_on` to `n`:

- 1 Activate the volume group `vg00` (if the volume group is not already activated):

```
# varyonvg vg00
```

- 2 Run the `chvg` command:

```
# chvg -a 'n' vg00
```

- 3 Verify the changes:

```
# lsattr -El vg00
vgserial_id 0001632f00004c00000000ee092b3bd8 N/A False
auto_on     n                                           N/A True
conc_capable n                                       N/A True
conc_auto_on n                                       N/A True
timestamp   3ceff3390a8b1379                               N/A True
```

LVMVG agent support for the Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)

The LVMVG agent supports the IBM Multi-pathing SDD version 1.4.0.0 and later. If disks are under SDD control, create a volume group with `vpath` devices. Refer to the SDD Documentation for configuration and migration of volume groups.

SDD support requires the `/usr/sbin/lquerypr` command, which provides a set of persistent reserve functions. The `lquerypr` command tool comes with the SDD installation fileset.

LVMVG agent support for the Hitachi's HiCommand Dynamic Link Manager (HDLM)

The LVMVG agent supports the Hitachi's HiCommand Dynamic Link Manager. For the details of the array and HDLM versions supported, refer to the HCL.

Note that if disks are under HDLM control, create a volume group with HDLM devices (`dlnfdvrn`). Refer to the HDLM documentation for configuration and migration of volume groups.

LVMVG agent support for the EMC PowerPath

The LVMVG agent supports the EMC PowerPath. For the details of the array and PowerPath versions supported, refer to the HCL.

Note that if disks are under PowerPath control, create a volume group with PowerPath devices (`hdiskpowern`). Refer to the EMC PowerPath documentation for configuration and migration of volume groups.

The hadevice utility

The LVMVG agent provides the hadevice utility. This utility checks the status of a disk device and resets a disk device to an available state. The utility then breaks any SCSI reservations on a disk device. Its syntax is:

```
# hadevice -c | -r | -b -p device_name
```

The five possible states of a disk device are: AVAILABLE, DEFINED AND RESERVED, DEFINED AND UNRESERVED, PERSISTENT RESERVATION, and AVAILABLE AND OPEN.

To check the state of a disk device, enter:

```
# hadevice -c device_name
```

The following commands locate and remove ghost disks for a disk device and break any SCSI reservation on the disk device. When the `-p` flag follows the `-b` flag, it breaks any previous SCSI reservation on the device. It then obtains and retains a new reservation on the device. For SDD (`vpath`) disks, ghost disks are not created. Both the `-b` and `-r` flags remove any persistent reservation and clear all reservation key registration on the device. The `-p` flag (retain reservation) is not applicable for SDD disks.

To break any SCSI reservations on the disk device, enter:

```
# hadevice -b device_name
```

To break any SCSI reservations on the disk device, and obtain and retain a new reservation on the device, enter:

```
# hadevice -b -p device_name
```

To locate and remove ghost disks, reset a disk device that is in a DEFINED state and put it into an AVAILABLE state, enter:

```
# hadevice -r device_name
```

Removing a ghost disk from VxVM control

If VxVM 5.0 is installed, you may need to remove a ghost disk from VxVM control before using hadevice utility (except `-r` option).

If you check the ghost disk's status using the `hadevice -c hdisk#` command, you get an error. The error reads: `V-16-10011-10237 Error opening the device /dev/hdisk# (The file access permissions do not allow the specified action.)` Check if the ghost disk is under VxVM control. You can do this using the `vxdisk -eq list` command. If the disk is under VxVM control, remove it using the `vxdisk rm vxvm_disk_name`.

In this example, `hdisk4` is a ghost disk.

```
sysA# vxdisk -eq list
Disk_0          auto      -        -        LVM       disk0
HDS9500-ALUA0_0 auto      -        -        error     hdisk4
HDS9500-ALUA0_1 auto      -        -        online    hdisk2
HDS9500-ALUA0_2 auto      -        -        online    hdisk3

sysA# vxdisk rm HDS9500-ALUA0_0
```

Sample configuration for LVMVG agent

The sample configuration for the IPAgent agent follows:

```
system sysA

system sysB

system sysC

group lvmgroup (
    SystemList = { sysA, sysB }
    AutoStartList = { sysA }

LVMVG lvmvg_vg1 (
    VolumeGroup = vg1
    MajorNumber = 50
)

LVMVG lvmvg_vg2 (
    VolumeGroup = vg2
    MajorNumber = 51
    ImportvgOpt = "f"
)
```

Debug log levels for LVMVG agent

The LVMVG agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_5

Mount agent

The Mount agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors a file system or an NFS client mount point. You can use the agent to make file systems or NFS client mount points highly available. This agent is WPAR-aware. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute for this type has a default value of 0 for RunInContainer and a default value of 0 for PassCInfo. Symantec recommends that you do not change these values. Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

This agent is IMF-aware and uses asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver for IMF notification. For more information about the Intelligent Monitoring Framework (IMF) and intelligent resource monitoring, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Note: Intelligent Monitoring Framework for mounts is supported only for the following mount types: VxFS and NFS.

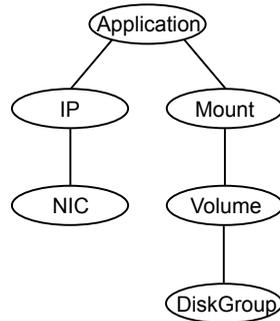
This agent also supports high availability fire drills.

For mounting the NFS file system, the Mount agent supports the IPv6 protocol.

For important information about this agent, See ["Notes for Mount agent"](#) on page 77.

Dependencies for Mount agent

The Mount resource does not depend on any other resources.

Figure 2-8 Sample service group that includes a Mount resource

Agent functions for Mount agent

Online	<p>Mounts a block device on the directory. If the mount process fails for non-NFS mounts, the agent attempts to run the fsck command on the device before attempting to mount the file system again.</p> <p>If file system type is NFS, agent mounts the remote file system to a specified directory. The remote NFS file system is specified in the BlockDevice attribute.</p>
Offline	Unmounts the mounted file system.
Monitor	<p>Determines if the file system is mounted.</p> <p>If IMF is enabled for the Mount agent, the resource is monitored asynchronously and any change in the resource state is immediately sent to VCS for appropriate action.</p>
imf_init	Initializes the agent to interface with the asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver. This function runs when the agent starts up.
imf_getnotification	Waits for notification about resource state changes. This function runs after the agent initializes with the AMF kernel driver. The agent continuously waits for notification and takes action on the resource upon notification.
imf_register	Registers the resource entities, which the agent must monitor, with the AMF kernel driver. This function runs for each resource after the resource goes into steady state (online or offline). This action entry point registers the mount point, block device, and file system type for mount agent.
Clean	Unmounts the mounted file system forcefully.

Info

The Mount agent info function executes the command:

```
# df -k mount_point
```

The output displays Mount resource information:

```
Size Used Avail Use%
```

To initiate the info agent function, set the InfoInterval timing to a value greater than 0. In this example, the info agent function executes every 60 seconds:

```
# haconf -makerw
```

```
# hatype -modify Mount InfoInterval 60
```

The command to retrieve information about the Mount resource is:

```
# hares -value mountres ResourceInfo
```

Output includes:

```
Size 2097152  
Used 139484  
Available 1835332  
Used% 8%
```

Action

- **chgmtlock**
Resets the VxFS file system lock to a VCS-defined lock.
- **mountpoint.vfd**
Checks if the specified mount point exists on the offline node. If it fails and you request that VCS fixes it, it creates the mount point directory using `mkdir` command.
- **mounted.vfd**
Checks if the mount point is already mounted on the offline node. If it fails, you need to unmount all the file systems from the specified mount point directory.
- **vxslic.vfd**
Checks for valid Veritas File System (VxFS) licenses. If it fails, you need to update the license for VxFS.
- **mountentry.vfd**
Checks that the mount point is not listed in auto file system tables. For example, `/etc/filesystems`,
If this action fails, you need to remove the mount point from auto file system tables.

State definitions for Mount agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

ONLINE	<p>For the local file system, indicates that the block device is mounted on the specified mount point.</p> <p>For an NFS client, indicates that the NFS remote file system is mounted on the specified mount directory.</p>
OFFLINE	<p>For the local file system, indicates that the block device is not mounted on the specified mount point.</p> <p>For an NFS client, indicates that the NFS remote file system is not mounted on the specified mount directory.</p>
FAULTED	<p>For the local file system, indicates that the block device has unexpectedly unmounted.</p> <p>For the NFS client, indicates that the NFS remote file system has unexpectedly unmounted.</p>
UNKNOWN	<p>Indicates that a problem exists either with the configuration or the ability to determine the status of the resource.</p>

Attributes for Mount agent

Table 2-13 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
BlockDevice	<p>Block device for mount point.</p> <p>When you specify the block device to mount, enclose IPv6 addresses in square brackets. The <code>mount</code> command requires square brackets around the IPv6 address to differentiate between the colons in the address and the colon that separates the remote host and remote directory.</p> <p>Note: If the block device to be mounted is renamed after device renaming, you must update the value of the BlockDevice attribute for Mount type resources.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ <code>"/dev/vx/dsk/myvcs_dg/myvol"</code>■ IPv4 <code>"10.209.70.90:/dirname/anotherdir"</code>■ IPv6 <code>"[fe80::1:2:3]:/dirname/anotherdir"</code>

Table 2-13 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
FsckOpt	<p>Mandatory for the following file systems types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ jfs▪ jfs2▪ vxfs <p>Use this attribute to specify options for the <code>fsck</code> command. You must correctly set this attribute for local mounts. If the mount process fails, the <code>fsck</code> command is executed with the specified options before it attempts to remount the block device. Its value must include either <code>-y</code>, <code>-n</code>, or <code>-p</code>. The <code>-p</code> option is only for jfs or jfs2 file systems on AIX. Refer to the <code>fsck</code> manual page for more information.</p> <p>For NFS mounts, the value of this attribute is not applicable and is ignored.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "-n"</p> <p>Example: "-y"</p> <p>Note: When you use the command line, add the % sign to escape '.'. For example: <code>hares -modify MntRes FsckOpt %-y</code></p>
FSType	<p>Type of file system.</p> <p>Supports jfs, jfs2, nfs, namefs, or vxfs.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "vxfs"</p>
MountPoint	<p>Directory for mount point</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "/tmp/mnt"</p>

Table 2-13 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
VxFSMountLock	<p>This attribute is only applicable to Veritas (VxFS) file systems. This attribute controls a file system locking feature to prevent accidental unmounts.</p> <p>This attribute can take three values: 0, 1, or 2.</p> <p>VxFSMountLock=0</p> <p>The resource does not detect any changes to the lock when VCS reports that it is online after you set the value to zero.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If the mount point is initially locked with the mntlock="VCS", the monitor agent function unlocks it. ■ If the mount point is initially locked with a key that is not equal to "VCS", the agent logs a message once. ■ If the mount point is initially not locked, no action is performed. <p>VxFSMountLock=1</p> <p>The resource does not detect changes to the lock when VCS reports it online after the value was set to one. VCS does not monitor the lock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If the mount point is initially locked with the mntlock="VCS", no action is performed. ■ If the mount point is initially locked with a key that is not equal to "VCS", the agent logs a message once. ■ If the mount point is initially not locked, the monitor agent function locks it with the mntlock="VCS". <p>VxFSMountLock=2</p> <p>When the value of the VxFSMountLock is 2, the file system is locked and the agent monitors any change to mntlock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If the mount point is locked with the mntlock="VCS", no action is performed. ■ If the mount point is initially locked with a key that is not equal to "VCS", the monitor agent function logs a message whenever a change in mntlock is detected. ■ If the mount point is not locked, the agent locks it with the mntlock="VCS". <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>

Table 2-14 Optional attributes for AIX

Optional attribute	Description
MountOpt	<p>Options for the <code>mount</code> command. Refer to the <code>mount</code> manual page for more information.</p> <p>Do not set the VxFS mount option "<code>mntlock=key</code>". The agent uses this option only when bringing a Mount resource online.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "<code>rw</code>"</p>
SnapUmount	<p>If the value of this attribute is 1, this attribute automatically unmounts VxFS snapshots when the file system is unmounted.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 0, and snapshots are mounted, the resource cannot be brought offline. In this case, failover does not occur.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
CkptUmount	<p>If the value of this attribute is 1, this attribute automatically unmounts VxFS Storage Checkpoints when file system is unmounted.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 0, and Storage Checkpoints are mounted, then failover does not occur.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>
AccessPermissionChk	<p>If the value of this attribute is 1 or 2, the monitor verifies that the values of the <code>MntPtPermission</code>, <code>MntPtOwner</code>, and <code>MntPtGroup</code> attributes are the same as the actual mounted file system values.</p> <p>If any of these do not match the values that you have defined, a message is logged.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 2, and if the mounted file system permissions do not match the attribute values, the Monitor agent function returns the state as OFFLINE.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>

Table 2-14 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
CreateMntPt	<p>If the value of this attribute is 0, no mount point is created. The mount can fail if the mount point does not exist with suitable permissions.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 1 or 2, and a mount point does not exist, the agent creates a mount point with system default permissions when the resource is brought online. If the permissions for the mount point are less than 555, a warning message is logged.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 2, and the mount point does not exist, the agent creates a mount point with system default permissions when the resource is brought online. If the permissions for the mount point are less than 555, a warning message is logged. In addition, VCS deletes the mount point and any recursively created directories when the resource is brought offline. The mount point gets deleted only if it is empty, which is also true for recursive mount points.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
MntPtGroup	<p>This attribute specifies the group ownership of the mounted file system. The agent verifies the group ownership of the mounted file system every monitor cycle if the value of the AccessPermissionChk attribute is not 0.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "grp1"</p>
MntPtOwner	<p>This attribute specifies the user ownership of the mounted file system. The agent verifies the user ownership of the mounted file system every monitor cycle if the value of the AccessPermissionChk attribute is not 0.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "usr1"</p>
MntPtPermission	<p>This attribute specifies the permissions of the mounted file system in an absolute format of a four-digit octal.</p> <p>The agent verifies the mode of the mounted file system every monitor cycle if the value of the AccessPermissionChk attribute is not 0.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "0755"</p>

Table 2-14 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
OptCheck	<p>The value of this attribute determines if VCS should verify the mount options. The state of the resource is determined based on the result of the verification.</p> <p>If the value of this attribute is 0 (default), the mount options are not checked.</p> <p>If the value of the OptCheck attribute is 1, 2 or 3, a check is performed to see if the mount command options that you have specified for VCS are set in the MountOpt attribute. The MountOpt attributes should be the same as the actual mount command options. If the actual mount options differ from the MountOpt attribute, a message is logged. The state of the resource depends on the value of this attribute.</p> <p>If the value of the attribute is 1, the state of the resource is unaffected.</p> <p>If the value is 2, the state of the resource is set to offline.</p> <p>If the value is 3, state of the resource is set to unknown.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
RecursiveMnt	<p>If the value of this attribute is 1, VCS creates all the parent directories of the mount point if necessary.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
ReuseMntPt	<p>If the same mount point needs to be specified in more than one mount resource, set the value of this attribute to 1. Note that this attribute only accepts a value of 1 or 0.</p> <p>To use this attribute, the cluster administrator needs to add this attribute to the ArgList resource type attribute of the agent. Set the appropriate group and resource dependencies such that only one resource can come online on a system at a time.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>

Resource type definition for Mount agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```
type Mount (  
    static keylist SupportedActions = { "mountpoint.vfd", "mounted.vfd",  
        "vxfslic.vfd", "mountentry.vfd", "chgmntlock" }  
    static str ArgList[] = { MountPoint, BlockDevice, FSType,  
        MountOpt, FsckOpt, SnapUmount, CkptUmount, OptCheck,  
        CreateMntPt, MntPtPermission, MntPtOwner, MntPtGroup,  
        AccessPermissionChk, RecursiveMnt, VxFSMountLock }  
    static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=0, PassCInfo=0 }  
    static str IMFRegList[] = { MountPoint, BlockDevice, FSType }  
    static boolean AEPTIMEOUT = 1  
    str MountPoint  
    str BlockDevice  
    str FSType  
    str MountOpt  
    str FsckOpt  
    int SnapUmount = 0  
    int CkptUmount = 1  
    int OptCheck = 0  
    int CreateMntPt = 0  
    int ReuseMntPt = 0  
    str MntPtPermission  
    str MntPtOwner  
    str MntPtGroup  
    int AccessPermissionChk = 0  
    boolean RecursiveMnt = 0  
    int VxFSMountLock = 1  
)
```

Notes for Mount agent

The Mount agent has the following notes:

- [High availability fire drill](#)
- [VxFS file system lock](#)
- [IMF usage notes](#)
- [IPv6 usage notes](#)
- [Bringing a Mount resource online in the WPAR](#)
- [Selecting the attribute values for a Mount resource for the WPAR's root file system for NFS mounts](#)

- Support for namefs file system
- Taking a group with the Mount resource offline can take several minutes if the file system is busy
- Example 1
- Example 2
- Example 3
- Enabling Level two monitoring for the Mount agent

High availability fire drill

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node; discrepancies that might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node.

For Mount resources, the high availability drill performs the following, it:

- Checks if the specified mount point directory exists
- Checks if the mount point directory is already used
- Checks for valid Veritas (VxFS) file system licenses
- Checks if the mount point exists in the `/etc/filesystems` file

For more information about using the high availability fire drill, see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

VxFS file system lock

If the mount option in the mount table output has the option `mntlock="key"`, then it is locked with the key "key". To verify if mount locking is in use and has the value of "key", run the `mount` command and review its output.

```
# mount
```

If the VxFS file system has `mntlock="key"` in its mount options, then unmounting the file system fails.

You can unlock the file system with the `fsadm` command and then unmount it. To unlock a locked mount, run the following command where "key" is the lock identifier and `mount_point_name` is the file system mount point.

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -o mntunlock="key" mount_point_name
```

To unmount a file system mounted with locking, run the `vxumount` command with the option `mntunlock="key"`, for example:

```
# /opt/VRTS/bin/umount -o mntunlock="key" mount_point_name
```

IMF usage notes

If you use IMF for intelligent resource monitoring, review the following recommendations. Depending on the value of the `FSType` attribute, you must set the `MonitorFreq` key value of the IMF attribute as follows:

- `FSType` attribute value is `vxfs`:
 - For VxFS version 5.1 SP1 or later:

You can either set the `MonitorFreq` to 0 or a high value. Setting the value of the `MonitorFreq` key to a high value will ensure that the agent does not run the monitor function frequently. Setting the `MonitorFreq` key to 0 will disable the traditional monitoring while IMF monitoring is in progress. Traditional monitoring will be done only after receiving the notification for a resource. However, if the value of the `AccessPermissionChk` attribute is set to 1, then set the `MonitorFreq` key value to the frequency at which you want the agent to run the monitor function.
 - For VxFS version 5.1 or earlier:

With VxFS versions prior to 5.1 SP1, VCS IMF only monitors file systems getting mounted and unmounted. To monitor other events, you must enable poll-based monitoring. Set the `MonitorFreq` key value to the frequency at which you want the agent to run the monitor function.

See the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for the IMF attribute description.

IPv6 usage notes

Review the following information for IPv6 use:

- For IPv6 functionality for NFS, you must use NFS version 4 in order to make the mount reachable. Note that NFSv4 requires several configuration steps in the operating system and NFS-related resources in VCS to enable it on the client and the exporting server.
- AIX defaults to NFSv3, which does not work across IPv6.
- Note that AIX's mount command refuses to accept IP addresses unless they are resolvable to a hostname.

Bringing a Mount resource online in the WPAR

The Mount resource is brought online in the global environment by default (RunInContainer = 0).

If you want to bring a mount resource online inside the WPAR, perform the following:

- Make sure the resource is in a service group that has the ContainerInfo attribute configured.
- Override this attribute at the resource level.
- Set the value of the RunInContainer key to 1.

Selecting the attribute values for a Mount resource for the WPAR's root file system for NFS mounts

For NFS mounts, you can run the SecondLevelMonitor in a container if you configure the following:

- RunInContainer = 0
- PassCInfo = 1
- Use the absolute path for the value of the MountPoint attribute for the Mount resource. The MountPoint attribute should not have the path relative to the WPAR root with this combination.
- Use a value of 1 for the SecondLevelMonitor attribute for the Mount resource.

The following are examples of relative and absolute paths:

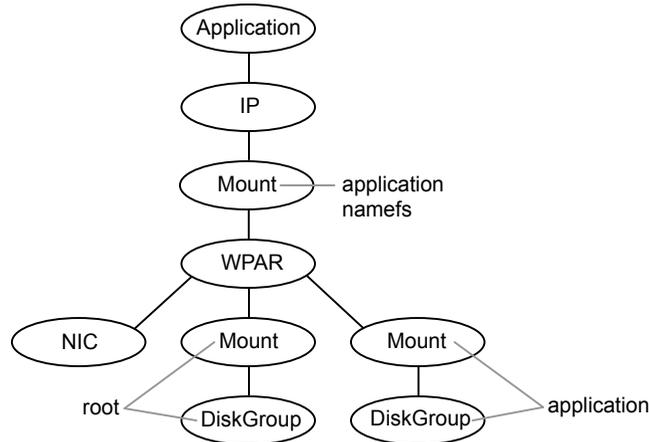
- The file system is mounted on: /wpar/p1/mnt
- The MountPoint attribute's value absolute path: /wpar/p1/mnt
- The MountPoint attribute's value relative path to WPAR root: /mnt

For more information on the ContainerOpts resource attribute, and its RunInContainer and PassCInfo keys, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Support for namefs file system

The Mount agent provides namefs file system support. You can manage the namefs file system as a Mount resource. Use namefs support to mount a file system in the global environment and share it in the WPAR. For namefs support, configure the FSType attribute to use a value of namefs.

Figure 2-9 Sample service group for the WPAR root on shared storage with a namefs file system when VCS manages the namefs file system as a Mount resource



The following is a sample configuration where you use the Mount resource to manage the namefs file system:

```

group namefssg (
    SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
    ContainerInfo@sysA = { Name = wpar1, Type = WPAR, Enabled = 1 }
    ContainerInfo@sysB = { Name = wpar1, Type = WPAR, Enabled = 1 }
)
Mount namefs_mnt_global_to_local (
    MountPoint = "/wpars/wpar1/namefs_mnt"
    BlockDevice = "/mnt1/m1"
    FSType = namefs
)
WPAR w1 (
    Mount base_mnt (
        MountPoint = "/mnt1"
        BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/tdg/tv011"
        FSType = vxfs
        FsckOpt = "-y"
    )
)
namefs_mnt_global_to_local requires w1
namefs_mnt_global_to_local requires base_mnt

```

Taking a group with the Mount resource offline can take several minutes if the file system is busy

When a file system has heavy I/O, the `umount` command can take several minutes to respond. However, the `umount` command temporarily deletes the mount point from mount command output while processing. Per IBM, this is the expected and supported behavior on AIX. The `umount` command's processing later puts the mount point back if the mount point is found busy. Meanwhile, the default `OfflineTimeout` value of the Mount agent can get exceeded, which in turn invokes the Clean agent function. The Clean function can find the mount point's entry absent from the mount command output and exit with success.

The unmounting, however, may not have happened yet. If unmounting did not occur, offlining resources below the Mount resource (for example the LVMVG or DiskGroup resources) can fail.

The Mount resource's Offline agent function then proceeds to unmount the mount point. After several attempts, the Clean scripts that clean the resources below the Mount resource succeed and the group goes offline.

See the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information about the `OfflineTimeout` attribute.

Example 1

In this `/etc/filesystems` entry for a VxFS file system created on a VxVM volume, `/mount_point` is the mount point for the file system, `/dev/vx/dsk/Diskgroup_name/Volume_name` is the block device on which the file system is created, and `vxfs` is the file system type.

```
/etc/filesystems:
/mount_point:
    dev      = /dev/vx/dsk/Diskgroup_name/Volume_name
    vfs      = vxfs      mount    = false
    check    = false
```

Example 2

In this `/etc/filesystems` entry for a JFS file system created on an LVM logical volume, `/mount_point2` is the mount point for the file system, `/dev/LVMlogical_volume` is the block device on which the file system is created, `/dev/LVMlogical_volumelog` is the log device for the file system automatically created by the `crfs` command, and `jfs` is the file system type.

```
/etc/filesystems:
/mount_point2:
    dev      = /dev/LVMlogical_volume
    vfstype  = jfs
    log      = /dev/LVMlogical_volumelog
    mount    = false
    check    = false
```

Example 3

Use the `crfs` and `mkfs` commands to create file systems.

VCS supports the following configurations for the Mount agent:

- LVM volume group with a JFS or JFS2 file system.
- VxVM volume with a VxFS file system.

Enabling Level two monitoring for the Mount agent

Level two monitoring can be enabled for the Mount agent only if `FSType` is set to "nfs".

To enable Level two monitoring, run the following commands:

- `# haconf -makerw`
- `# hares -override resource_name LevelTwoMonitorFreq`
- `# hares -modify resource_name LevelTwoMonitorFreq 1`
- `# haconf -dump -makero`

For more details about the `LevelTwoMonitorFreq` attribute, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Agent Developer's Guide*.

Sample configurations for Mount agent

Configuration 1 for Mount agent

In the following configuration, `vg00` is a LVM volume group. The mount resource `mnt` requires the `lvmvg_vg00` LVMVG resource.

```
LVMVG lvmvg_vg00 (
  VolumeGroup = vg00
  MajorNumber = 50
)
Mount mnt (
```

```
MountPoint = "/lvm_testmnt"  
BlockDevice = "/dev/lv00"  
FSType = jfs  
FsckOpt = "-p"  
)  
  
mnt requires lvmvg_vg00
```

Configuration 2 for Mount agent

In the following configuration, vol0 is a volume in diskgroup testdg_1 created with VxVM. Mount resource m0 requires the dg1 diskgroup resource.

```
DiskGroup dg1 (  
    DiskGroup = testdg_1  
)  
  
Mount m0 (  
    MountPoint = "/tmp/m0"  
    BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/testdg_1/vol0"  
    FSType = vxfs  
    FsckOpt = "-y"  
)  
  
m0 requires dg1
```

Configuration 3 for AIX for Mount agent

Configuration 3 for AIX follows:

In the following configuration, sysA is the remote NFS server and /home/xyz is the remote directory.

```
Mount mnt3 (  
    MountPoint = "/tmp/m1"  
    BlockDevice = "sysA:/home/xyz"  
    FSType = nfs  
)
```

Debug log levels for Mount agent

The Mount agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

Network agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the network agents](#)
- [IP agent](#)
- [NIC agent](#)
- [IPMultiNIC agent](#)
- [MultiNICA agent](#)
- [About the IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB agents](#)
- [IPMultiNICB agent](#)
- [MultiNICB agent](#)
- [DNS agent](#)

About the network agents

Use network agents to provide high availability for networking resources.

All networking agents IP, NIC, IPMultiNIC, MultiNICA, IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB agents support IPv4 as well as IPv6 protocols.

All these agents also support EtherChannel.

Agent comparisons

Agent comparisons may be made as described in the following sections.

IP and NIC agents

The IP and NIC agents:

- Monitor a single NIC

IPMultiNIC and MultiNICA agents

The IPMultiNIC and MultiNICA agents:

- Monitor single or multiple NICs
- Check the backup NICs at fail over
- Use the original base IP address when failing over
- Provide slower failover compared to MultiNICB but can function with fewer IP addresses
- Have only one active NIC at a time

IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB agents

The IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB agents:

- Monitor single or multiple NICs
- Check the backup NICs as soon as it comes up
- Require a pre-assigned base IP address for each NIC
- Do not fail over the original base IP address
- Provide faster fail over compared to MultiNICA but require more IP addresses
- Have more than one active NIC at a time

802.1Q trunking

The IP/NIC, IPMultiNIC/MultiNICA, and IPMultiNICB/MultiNICB agents support 802.1Q trunking.

To use 802.1Q trunking, create 802.1Q trunked interfaces over a physical interface using the SMIT. The physical interface is connected to a 802.1Q trunked port on the switch.

The NIC, MultiNICA, and MultiNICB agents can monitor these trunked interfaces. The IP, IPMultiNIC, and IPMultiNICB agents monitor the virtual IP addresses that are configured on these interfaces.

For example, create a 802.1Q interface called en6 over a physical interface called en0. Do not configure an IP address on en0. You connect en0 to a trunked port on

the switch. The NIC and IP agents can then monitor en6 and the virtual IP address configured on en6.

EtherChannel support

EtherChannel aggregates multiple network interfaces so that they appear as a single interface. The IP/NIC, IPMultiNIC/MultiNICA, and IPMultiNICB/MultiNICB agents support EtherChannel use with VCS. For example you can combine en0 and en1 into an EtherChannel and call the combined interface en2. You then use the NIC (or MultiNICA or MultiNICB) agent to monitor this en2 interface. You use the IP (or IPMultiNIC or IPMultiNICB) agent to configure and monitor an IP address on the en2 interface. Note that you use the en2 interface configured through EtherChannel for the Device attribute. EtherChannel is responsible for providing local adapter swapping, which is outside of VCS control. EtherChannel backup and active-active modes are supported.

IP agent

The IP agent manages the process of configuring a virtual IP address and its subnet mask on an interface. The virtual IP address must not be in use. You can use this agent when you want to monitor a single IP address on a single adapter.

The interface must be enabled with a physical (or administrative) base IP address before you can assign it a virtual IP address.

This agent is WPAR-aware. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute for this type has a default value of 0 for RunInContainer and a default value of 1 for PassCInfo. Symantec recommends that you do not change these values.

Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

High availability fire drill for IP agent

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node. These discrepancies might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node. For IP resources, the high availability fire drill:

- Checks for the existence of a route to the IP from the specified NIC
- Checks for the existence of the interface configured in the IP resource

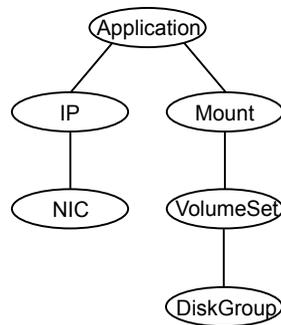
For more information about using the high availability fire drill see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Dependencies for IP agent

IP resources depend on NIC resources.

They can also depend on WPAR resources.

Figure 3-1 Sample service group that includes an IP resource



Agent functions for IP agent

Online	Uses the <code>ifconfig</code> command to set the IP address as an alias on the interface.
Action	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ <code>route.vfd</code> Checks for the existence of a route to the IP from the specified NIC.■ <code>device.vfd</code> Checks for the existence of the interface configured in the Device attribute.
Offline	Brings down the IP address that is specified in the Address attribute.
Monitor	Monitors the interface to test if the IP address that is associated with the interface is alive.
Clean	Brings down the IP address that is specified in the Address attribute.

State definitions for IP agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

ONLINE	Indicates that the device is up and the specified IP address is assigned to the device.
--------	---

OFFLINE	Indicates that the device is down or the specified IP address is not assigned to the device.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent could not determine the state of the resource or that the resource attributes are invalid.
FAULTED	Indicates that the IP address could not be brought online, usually because the NIC configured in the IP resource is faulted or the IP address was removed out of VCS control.

Attributes for IP agent

For AIX:

Table 3-1 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
Address	<p>A virtual IP address that is different from the base IP address, and that is associated with the interface. Note that the address you specify must not be the same as the configured physical IP address, but should be on the same network.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>IPv4: "192.203.47.61"</p> <p>IPv6: "2001::10"</p>
Device	<p>The name of the NIC device that is associated with the IP address.</p> <p>When a network interface or a network adapter of the type IP under VCS control is renamed, you must update the value of the Device attribute of the IP resource.</p> <p>Note: Symantec recommends to offline the service groups containing the network resources before renaming the network interfaces and adapters and to update the VCS configuration to avoid any undesired behaviour.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "en0"</p>
One of the following attribute:	See Table 3-2 on page 90.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ NetMask ■ PrefixLen 	

Table 3-2 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
Options	<p>Options for the <code>ifconfig</code> command.</p> <p>For complete list of <code>ifconfig</code> options refer to <code>ifconfig</code> manpage.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "metric 4 mtu 1400"</p>
RouteOptions	<p>Specifies the routing options that are passed to the <code>route add</code> command when the agent configures an interface. The <code>RouteOptions</code> attribute value is generally formed like this: "<i>destination gateway metric</i>".</p> <p>For details about the <code>route</code> command, refer to the man page for your operating system.</p> <p>When the value of this string is null, the agent does not add routes.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "192.100.201.0 192.100.13.7"</p> <p>In this example, the agent executes the "<code>route add 192.100.201.0 192.100.13.7</code>" command when it configures an interface.</p>
PrefixLen	<p>This is the prefix for the IPv6 address represented as the CIDR value.</p> <p>When you use the IPv6 protocol, you must configure values for this attribute and the corresponding NIC resource's <code>Device</code> and <code>Protocol</code> attributes.</p> <p>Type-dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Range: 1 - 128</p> <p>Example: 64</p>
NetMask	<p>For IPv4 protocol, the subnet mask that is associated with the IP address.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>"255.255.255.0"</p>

Resource type definition for IP agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```
type IP (
    static keylist RegList = { NetMask }
```

```
static keylist SupportedActions = { "device.vfd", "route.vfd" }
static str ArgList[] = { Device, Address, NetMask, Options,
RouteOptions, PrefixLen }
static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=0, PassCInfo=1 }
str Device
str Address
str NetMask
str Options
str RouteOptions
int PrefixLen
)
```

Sample configurations for IP agent

The sample configurations for this agent follow:

NetMask in decimal (base 10)

Configuration with decimal NetMask:

```
IP ipres (
Device = en0
Address = "192.203.47.61"
NetMask = "255.255.248.0"
)
```

NetMask in hexadecimal (base 16)

Configuration with hexadecimal NetMask:

```
IP ipres (
Device = en0
Address = "192.203.47.61"
NetMask = "0xfffff800"
)
```

Debug log levels for IP agent

The IP agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_4

NIC agent

The NIC agent monitors the configured NIC. If a network link fails, or if a problem arises with the NIC, the resource is marked FAULTED. You can use the agent to make a single IP address on a single adapter highly available. This resource's Operation value is None.

This agent is compatible with AIX WPARs. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute is not specified for this type. Symantec recommends that you do not change the values for the ContainerOpts keys.

Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

High availability fire drill for NIC agent

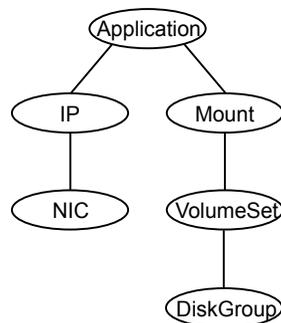
The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node. These discrepancies might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node. For NIC resources, the high availability fire drill checks for the existence of the NIC on the host.

For more information about using the high availability fire drill, see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Dependencies for NIC agent

The NIC resource does not depend on any other resources.

Figure 3-2 Sample service group that includes a NIC resource



The NIC listed in the Device attribute must have a base IP address. The base IP address is the default IP address that is assigned to the physical interface of a host on a network. This agent does not configure network routes or base IP addresses.

Before you use this agent:

- Verify that the NIC has the correct base IP address and subnet mask.

- Verify that the NIC does not have built-in failover support. If it does, disable it.

Agent functions for NIC agent

Monitor	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Tests the network card and network link. Pings the network hosts or broadcast address of the interface to generate traffic on the network. Counts the number of packets passing through the device before and after the address is pinged. If the count decreases or remains the same, the resource is marked FAULTED. If the NetworkHosts list is empty, or the ping test fails, the agent sends a ping to the device's broadcast address to generate network traffic. The agent checks for any response to the broadcast request. If there is no reply to the broadcast ping, the resource faults. Note: For AIX, the systems do not respond to broadcast pings by default. Run the <code>no -o bcastping=1</code> command to enable response to broadcast pings.
Action	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ <code>device.vfd</code> Checks for the existence of the interface configured in the Device attribute.

State definitions for NIC agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

ONLINE	Indicates that the NIC resource is working.
FAULTED	Indicates that the NIC has failed.
UNKNOWN	Indicates the agent cannot determine the interface state. It may be due to an incorrect configuration.

Attributes for NIC agent

Table 3-3 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
Device	<p>Specifies the name of the NIC that you want to monitor.</p> <p>Use the <code>lsdev</code> command to check for all available network adapters.</p> <p>When a network interface or a network adapter of the type NIC under VCS control is renamed, you must update the value of the Device attribute of the NIC resource.</p> <p>Note: Symantec recommends to offline the service groups containing the network resources before renaming the network interfaces and adapters and to update the VCS configuration to avoid any undesired behaviour.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "en0"</p>
NetworkHosts	<p>Required for virtual devices.</p> <p>See Table 3-4 on page 94.</p>
Protocol	<p>Required to use the IPv6 protocol.</p> <p>See Table 3-4 on page 94.</p>

Table 3-4 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
NetworkHosts	<p>List of hosts on the same network that are pinged to determine if the network connection is alive. Enter the IP address of the host, instead of the host name, to prevent the monitor from timing out. DNS lookup causes the ping to hang. If more than one network host is listed, the monitor returns ONLINE if at least one of the hosts is reachable.</p> <p>If you do not specify network hosts, the monitor tests the NIC by sending pings to the broadcast address on the NIC.</p> <p>For a virtual device, you must configure the NetworkHosts attribute. Symantec recommends configuring more than one host to take care of the NetworkHost itself failing.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: { "166.96.15.22", "166.97.1.2" }</p>

Table 3-4 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
NetworkType	<p>Specifies the type of network.</p> <p>Type and Dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "ether"</p>
PingOptimize	<p>Determines whether to ping every monitor cycle.</p> <p>A value of 0 means that the agent pings either the network hosts or the broadcast address every monitor cycle. It pings each cycle to determine the state of the network interface.</p> <p>A value of 1 means that the agent uses the device statistics from the netstat output to determine the state of the interface. If no activity exists on the interface, the agent then pings the broadcast address to double-check the state of the network interface.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>
Protocol	<p>Specifies the type of IP protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) that you want to use with the agent.</p> <p>When you use the IPv6 protocol, you must configure values for this attribute, the Device attribute, and the corresponding IP resource's PrefixLen attribute.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: IPv4</p> <p>Example: IPv6</p>

Resource type definition for NIC agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```
type NIC (
static keylist SupportedActions = { "device.vfd" }
static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60
static str ArgList[] = { Device, Protocol, PingOptimize,
NetworkHosts, NetworkType }
static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=0, PassCInfo=0 }
static str Operations = None
str Device
str Protocol = "ipv4"
```

```
int PingOptimize = 1
str NetworkType
str NetworkHosts[]
)
```

Sample configurations for NIC agent

Configuration without network hosts (using default ping mechanism) for NIC agent

```
NIC nicres (
  Device = en0
  PingOptimize = 0
)
```

Configuration with network hosts for NIC agent

```
NIC nicres (
  Device = en0
  NetworkHosts = { "10.182.1.1", "10.182.1.2" }
)
```

IPv6 configuration for NIC agent

The following is a basic configuration for IPv6 with IP and NIC resources.

```
group nic_group (
  SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
  Parallel = 1
)
NIC nic_resource (
  Device@sysA = en0
  Device@sysB = en1
  PingOptimize = 0
  NetworkHosts@sysA = { "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fe96:11",
    "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fe96:1" }
  NetworkHosts@sysB = { "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fe96:1111",
    "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fe96:111" }
  Protocol = IPv6
)
Phantom phantom_resource (
)
group ip_group (
```

```
SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
)
IP ip_resource (
Device@sysA = en0
Device@sysB = en1
Address = "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fe96:102"
PrefixLen = 64
Protocol = IPv6
)
Proxy proxy_resource (
TargetResName = nic_resource
)
ip_resource requires proxy_resource
```

Debug log levels for NIC agent

The NIC agent uses the following debug log levels:

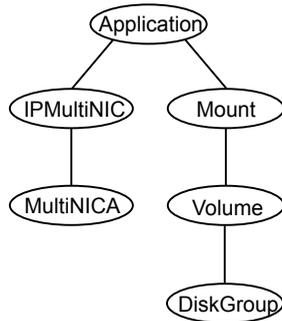
DBG_1, DBG_2

IPMultiNIC agent

The IPMultiNIC agent manages the virtual IP address that is configured as an alias on one interface of a MultiNICA resource. If the interface faults, the agent works with the MultiNICA resource to fail over the virtual IP to a backup interface. If multiple service groups have IPMultiNIC resources associated with the same MultiNICA resource, only one group must have the MultiNICA resource. The other groups have Proxy resources pointing to it. You can use this agent for IP addresses on multiple-adaptor systems.

Dependencies for IPMultiNIC agent

IPMultiNIC resources depend on MultiNICA resources. They can also depend on WPAR resources.

Figure 3-3 Sample service group that includes an IPMultiNIC resource

Agent functions for IPMultiNIC agent

Online	Configures a virtual IP address on the active interface of the MultiNICA resource. Also sends out a gratuitous ARP.
Offline	Removes the virtual IP address from the active interface of the MultiNICA resource.
Monitor	Checks if the virtual IP address is configured on one interface of the MultiNICA resource.

State definitions for IPMultiNIC agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

ONLINE	Indicates that the specified IP address is assigned to one of the interfaces specified in the corresponding MultiNICA resource.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the specified IP address is not assigned to any interface of the MultiNICA resource.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent can not determine the state of the resource. This state may be due to an incorrect configuration.
FAULTED	Indicates that the IP address could not be brought online, usually because all the NICs in the MultiNICA resource are faulted or the IP address was removed out of VCS control.

Attributes for IPMultiNIC agent

Table 3-5 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
Address	The virtual IP address that is assigned to the active interface. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: IPv4: "10.128.10.14" IPv6: "2001:DB8::"
MultiNICAResName	Name of the associated MultiNICA resource that determines the active interface. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "MultiNICA_res1"
One of the two attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">NetMaskPrefixLen	See Table 3-6 on page 99.

Table 3-6 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
Options	The <code>ifconfig</code> command options for the virtual IP address. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "mtu 2000"
PrefixLen	Specifies the prefix for the IPv6 address represented as the CIDR value. When you use the IPv6 protocol, you must configure values for this attribute and the corresponding MultiNICA agent's Device, Protocol and PrefixLen attributes. Type-dimension: integer-scalar Range: 1 - 128 Example: 64

Table 3-6 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
NetMask	<p>The IPv4 protocol netmask for the virtual IP address.</p> <p>Required to use the IPv4 protocol.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "255.255.255.0"</p>

Note: The default value of the ToleranceLimit static attribute is 3. A value higher than zero helps to prevent the IPMultiNIC agent from performing a failover of the virtual IP address to another system before the MultiNICA agent does a local failover of the virtual IP address.

Resource type definition for IPMultiNIC agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```

type IPMultiNIC (
static str ArgList[] = { "MultiNICAResName:Device", Address,
NetMask, Options, "MultiNICAResName:Probed",
"MultiNICAResName:Protocol", MultiNICAResName, PrefixLen }
static int MonitorTimeout = 120
static int ToleranceLimit = 3
str Address
str NetMask
str Options
int PrefixLen
str MultiNICAResName
)

```

Sample configuration: IPMultiNIC and MultiNICA

Refer to the MultiNICA agent for more information.

Configuration for IPMultiNIC agent

Configuration for this agent on AIX follows:

```

group grpl (
SystemList = { sysa = 0, sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)

```

```
)
MultiNICA mnic (
Device@sysa = { en0 = "10.128.8.42", en1 = "10.128.8.42" }
Device@sysb = { en0 = "10.128.8.43", en1 = "10.128.8.43" }

NetMask = "255.255.255.0"
Gateway = "10.128.1.1"
BroadcastAddr = "10.128.8.255"
)
IPMultiNIC ip1 (
Address = "10.128.10.14"
NetMask = "255.255.255.0"
MultiNICAResName = mnic
)

ip1 requires mnic
group grp2 (
SystemList = { sysa = 0, sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
IPMultiNIC ip2 (
Address = "10.128.9.4"
NetMask = "255.255.255.0"
MultiNICAResName = mnic
Options = "mtu 1500"
)
Proxy proxy (
TargetResName = mnic
)
ip2 requires proxy
```

Debug log levels

The IPMultiNIC agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_4, DBG_5

MultiNICA agent

The MultiNICA agent represents a set of network interfaces and provides failover capabilities between them. You can use the agent to make IP addresses on multiple-adapter systems highly available or to monitor them. Each interface in a MultiNICA resource has a base IP address. You can use one base IP address for

all interfaces, or you can specify a different IP address for use with each interface. The MultiNICA agent configures one interface at a time. If it does not detect activity on the configured interface, it configures a new interface and migrates IP aliases to it.

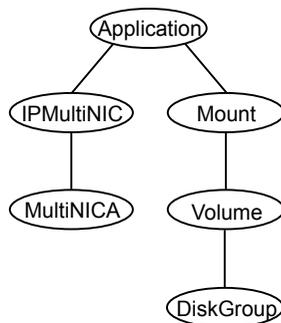
If an interface is associated with a MultiNICA resource, do not associate it with any other MultiNICA, MultiNICB, or NIC resource. If the same set of interfaces must be a part of multiple service groups, configure a MultiNICA resource in one of the service groups. In the other service groups, configure Proxy resources that point to the MultiNICA resource in the first service group.

For more information on this agent, refer to See [“Notes for MultiNICA agent”](#) on page 107.

Dependencies for MultiNICA agent

The MultiNICA resource does not depend on any other resources.

Figure 3-4 Sample service group that includes a MultiNICA resource



Agent function for MultiNICA agent

Monitor	Checks the status of the active interface. If the agent detects a failure, it tries to migrate the IP addresses that are configured on that interface. If possible, it tries to migrate the addresses to the next available interface that is configured in the Device attribute.
---------	---

Note: Systems do not respond to broadcast pings by default. You must run `"no -o bcstpings=1"` to enable response to broadcast pings.

State definitions for MultiNICA agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

ONLINE	Indicates that one or more of the network interfaces listed in the Device attribute of the resource is in working condition.
FAULTED	Indicates that all of the network interfaces listed in the Device attribute failed.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent cannot determine the state of the network interfaces that are specified in the Device attribute. This state may be due to incorrect configuration.

Attributes for MultiNICA agent

For AIX:

Table 3-7 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
BroadcastAddr	Broadcast address Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "10.192.15.255"
Device	List of interfaces and their base IP addresses. When a network interface or a network adapter of the type MultiNICA under VCS control is renamed, you must update the value of the Device attribute of the MultiNICA resource. Note: Symantec recommends to offline the service groups containing the network resources before renaming the network interfaces and adapters and to update the VCS configuration to avoid any undesired behaviour. For each system you must localize the attribute with a separate base IP address. Type and dimension: string-association Example: { en0 = "10.128.8.42", en1 = "10.128.8.42" }
Gateway	IP address for the default gateway. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "10.192.1.7"

Table 3-7 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
<p>One of the two attributes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ NetMask ■ PrefixLen 	<p>See Table 3-8 on page 104.</p>
Protocol	<p>Required to use the IPv6 protocol.</p> <p>See Table 3-8 on page 104.</p>

Table 3-8 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
HandshakeInterval	<p>Specifies the maximum number of tries the agent makes either to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ping a host (listed in the NetworkHosts attribute) before it fails over to a new interface, or ■ ping the default broadcast address (depending on the attribute configured) before it fails over to a new interface. <p>To prevent spurious failovers, the agent must try to contact a host on the network several times before it marks an interface as FAULTED. Increased values result in longer failover times, whether between the interface or from system to system in the case of FAULTED interfaces.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>
NetworkHosts	<p>The list of hosts on the network that are pinged to determine if the network connection is alive. Enter the IP address of the host, instead of the host name, to prevent the monitor from timing out. DNS lookup causes the ping to hang. If this attribute is unspecified, the monitor tests the NIC by pinging the broadcast address on the interface. If more than one network host is listed, the monitor returns online if at least one of the hosts is alive.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: {"128.93.2.1", "128.97.1.2"}</p>
Options	<p>The <code>ifconfig</code> command options for the base IP address.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "metric 4 mtu 1400"</p>

Table 3-8 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
PingOptimize	<p>Determines whether to ping every monitor cycle.</p> <p>A value of 0 means that the agent pings either the network hosts or the broadcast address every monitor cycle. It pings every cycle to determine the state of the network interface.</p> <p>A value of 1 means that the agent uses the device statistics from the netstat output to determine the state of the interface. If no activity exists on the interface, the agent then pings the broadcast address to double-check the state of the network interface.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>
RouteOptions	<p>Specifies the routing options that are passed to the <code>route add</code> command when the agent configures an interface. The RouteOptions attribute value is generally formed like this: "<i>destination gateway metric</i>".</p> <p>For details about the <code>route</code> command, refer to the man page for your operating system.</p> <p>When the value of this string is null, the agent does not add routes.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "192.100.201.0 192.100.13.7"</p>
FailoverInProgress	<p>For internal use only.</p>
PrefixLen	<p>Specifies the prefix for the IPv6 address represented as the CIDR value.</p> <p>When you use the IPv6 protocol, you must configure values for this attribute, the Device, Protocol attributes, and and the corresponding IPMultiNIC resources' PrefixLen attributes.</p> <p>Type-dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Range: 1 - 128</p> <p>Example: 64</p>

Table 3-8 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
NetMask	<p>Netmask for the base IP address.</p> <p>Required to use the IPv4 protocol.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "255.255.255.0"</p> <p>This attribute is required when the resource is configured for the IPv4 protocol.</p>
Protocol	<p>Specifies the type of IP protocol (IPv4 or IPv6) that you want to use with the agent.</p> <p>When you use the IPv6 protocol, you must configure values for this attribute, the Device attribute, and the corresponding IPMultiNIC resources' PrefixLen attributes.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: IPv4</p> <p>Example: IPv6</p>

Resource type definition for MultiNICA agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```

type MultiNICA (
static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60
static int MonitorTimeout = 300
static str ArgList[] = { Device, NetMask, Gateway,
BroadcastAddr, Options, RouteOptions, PingOptimize,
MonitorOnly, HandshakeInterval, NetworkHosts, PrefixLen,
Protocol }
static str Operations = None
str Device{}
str NetMask
str Gateway
str BroadcastAddr
str Options
str RouteOptions
int PingOptimize = 1
int HandshakeInterval = 1
int PrefixLen

```

```
str Protocol = "ipv4"  
str NetworkHosts[]  
temp boolean FailoverInProgress = 0  
)
```

Notes for MultiNICA agent

- If all interfaces configured in the Device attribute are down, the MultiNICA agent faults the resource after a two-three minute interval. This delay occurs because the MultiNICA agent tests the failed interface several times before it marks the resource OFFLINE. Engine logs record a detailed description of the events during a failover.
- For a single main.cf configuration file, you can only have one MultiNICA resource, which uses either the IPv4 or the IPv6 protocol for a given set of devices. For example, you can have a MultiNICA resource configured as follows:

```
MultiNICA mnic (  
    Device@sysa = { en0 = "10.128.8.42", en1 = "10.128.8.42" }  
    Device@sysb = { en0 = "10.128.8.43", en1 = "10.128.8.43" }
```

- The MultiNICA agent supports only one active interface on one IP subnet; the agent does not work with multiple active interfaces on the same subnet. For example, you have two active interfaces, en0 (10.128.2.5) and en1 (10.128.2.8). You configure a third interface, en2, as the backup interface to en1. The agent does not fail over from en1 to en2 because some ping tests are redirected through en0 on the same subnet. The redirect makes the MultiNICA monitor return an online status.

Sample configurations for MultiNICA agent

The sample configurations for this agent follow:

MultiNICA and IPMultiNIC

In the following example, two systems, sysa and sysb, each have a pair of network interfaces, en0 and en1. In this example, the two interfaces, en0 and en1, have the same base, or physical, IP address. Note the lines beginning Device@sysa and Device@sysb; the use of different physical addresses shows how to localize an attribute for a particular host.

The MultiNICA resource fails over the IP addresses to the backup interface in the event of a failure of the active interface. The resources ip1 and ip2, shown in the following example, have the Address attribute that contains the virtual IP address.

In the event of an interface failure on sysa, the physical IP address and the two virtual IP addresses fail over from en0 to en1.

However, if both the interfaces on sysa are disconnected, the MultiNICA and IPMultiNIC resources work in tandem to fault the group on sysa. The entire group now fails over to sysb.

If you have more than one group using the MultiNICA resource, the other groups can use a Proxy resource. The Proxy resource points to the MultiNICA resource in the first group. The Proxy resource prevents redundant monitoring of the interfaces on the same system. The IPMultiNIC resource is always made dependent on the MultiNICA resource.

```
group grp1 (
SystemList = { sysa = 0 , sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
MultiNICA mnic (
Device@sysa = { en0 = "10.128.8.42", en1 = "10.128.8.42" }
Device@sysb = { en0 = "10.128.8.43", en1 = "10.128.8.43" }
NetMask = "255.255.0.0"
Gateway = "10.128.1.1"
BroadcastAddr = "10.128.255.255"
Options = "mtu 1500"
)
IPMultiNIC ip1 (
Address = "10.128.10.14"
NetMask = "255.255.0.0"
MultiNICAResName = mnic
Options = "mtu 1500"
)
ip1 requires mnic
group grp2 (
SystemList = { sysa = 0 , sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
IPMultiNIC ip2 (
Address = "10.128.9.4"
NetMask = "255.255.0.0"
MultiNICAResName = mnic
Options = "mtu 1500"
)
Proxy proxy (
TargetResName = mnic
```

```
)  
ip2 requires proxy
```

IPv6 configuration for MultiNICA agent

The following is a basic configuration for IPv6.

```
group mnica_group (  
  SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }  
)  
IPMultiNIC ipmnic_res (  
  Address = "2007:192::1627:161"  
  MultiNICAResName = mnica_res  
  PrefixLen = 64  
)  
MultiNICA mnica_res (  
  Device@sysA = { en0 = "fe80::214:4fff:fe96:ae0a",  
    en1 = "fe80::214:4fff:fe96:ae0a" }  
  Device@sysB = { en0 = "fe80::214:4fff:fe98:aeFb",  
    en1 = "fe80::214:4fff:fe98:aeFb" }  
  PrefixLen = 64  
  Protocol = ipv6  
)  
ipmnic_res requires mnica_res
```

Debug log levels for MultiNICA agent

The MultiNICA agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

About the IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB agents

The IPMultiNICB and the MultiNICB agents can handle multiple NIC connections. Due to differences in the way that each platform handles its networking connections, these agents vary in design between platforms.

Checklist to ensure the proper operation of MultiNICB

For the MultiNICB agent to function properly, you must satisfy each item in the following list:

- Each interface must have a unique MAC address.

- At boot time, you must configure and connect all the interfaces that are under the MultiNICB resource and give them base IP addresses.
- All base IP addresses for the MultiNICB resource must belong to the same subnet as the virtual IP address.
- If you specify the NetworkHosts attribute, then that host must be on the same subnet as the base IP addresses for the MultiNICB resource.
- If any network host is meant to respond to a broadcast ping, run `no -o bcastping=1` on the network host.
- You must use the AIX SMIT configuration tool to configure the base IP addresses and to make them persistent across reboots. If you do not use SMIT to configure the IP addresses the agent may failover incorrectly.
- Ensure that media speed settings are the same for both the interface and the corresponding switch port. Symantec recommends setting the media speed to full duplex mode.

IPMultiNICB agent

The IPMultiNICB agent works with the MultiNICB agent. The agent configures and manages virtual IP addresses (IP aliases) on an active network device that the MultiNICB resource specifies. When the MultiNICB agent reports a particular interface as failed, the IPMultiNICB agent moves the virtual IP address to the next active interface. You can use this agent for IP addresses on multiple-adaptor systems.

If multiple service groups have IPMultiNICB resources associated with the same MultiNICB resource, only one group should have a MultiNICB resource. The other groups should have a proxy resource pointing to the MultiNICB resource.

This agent is WPAR-aware. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute for this type has a default value of 0 for RunInContainer and a default value of 1 for PassCInfo. Symantec recommends that you do not change these values.

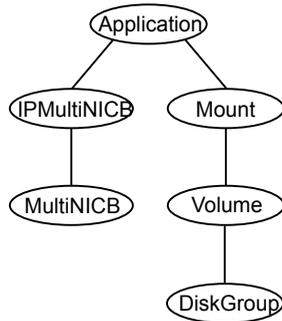
Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

Refer to the *Storage Foundation High Availability Virtualization Guide*.

Dependencies for IPMultiNICB agent

IPMultiNICB resources depend on MultiNICB resources.

They can also depend on WPAR resources.

Figure 3-5 Sample service group that includes an IPMultiNICB resource

Requirements for IPMultiNICB

The following conditions must exist for the IPMultiNICB agent to function correctly:

- The MultiNICB agent must be running to inform the IPMultiNICB agent of the available interfaces.
- One IPMultiNICB agent can control only one virtual IP address.

The haipswitch utility for IPMultiNICB agent

You can use the haipswitch utility to switch IP addresses between MultiNICB interfaces on the same system. Running the utility with the -h flag gives an example of usage.

Agent functions for IPMultiNICB agent

Online	Finds a working interface with the appropriate interface alias or interface name, and configures the virtual IP address on it.
Offline	Removes the virtual IP address.
Clean	Removes the virtual IP address.
Monitor	If the virtual IP address is not configured as an alias on one of the working interfaces under a corresponding MultiNICB resource, monitor returns OFFLINE. If the current interface fails, the agent fails over the virtual IP address to the next available working interface that is within the MultiNICB resource on the same node. If no working interfaces are available then monitor returns OFFLINE.
Open	Data structures necessary for monitoring the network interfaces are created.

- Close Data structures that the monitor agent function uses are freed.
- Attr_Changed Updates the data structures that are used for monitoring the interfaces.

State definitions for IPMultiNICB agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

- ONLINE** Indicates that the virtual IP address is up on one of the working network interfaces of the MultiNICB resource. The virtual IP address is specified in the Address attribute. The MultiNICB resource is specified in the MultiNICBResName attribute.
- OFFLINE** Indicates that the virtual IP address is not up on any of the working network interfaces of the MultiNICB resource. The virtual IP address is specified in the Address attribute. The MultiNICB resource is specified in the MultiNICBResName attribute.
- UNKNOWN** Indicates that the agent cannot determine the status of the virtual IP address that is specified in the Address attribute.
- FAULTED** Indicates that the virtual IP address could not be brought online, usually because all the interfaces configured in the MultiNICB resource have failed or the virtual IP address was removed out of VCS control.

Attributes for IPMultiNICB agent

For AIX:

Table 3-9 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
Address	<p>Defines the dotted decimal virtual IP address.</p> <p>This IP address must be different than the base IP addresses in the MultiNICB resource.</p> <p>The IPMultiNICB agent automatically assigns the virtual IP address. Do not configure this IP address before the IPMultiNICB agent goes online. If the IP address is already configured, the agent returns an error.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "10.118.10.15"</p>

Table 3-9 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
MultiNICBResName	Contains the name of the MultiNICB resource that the IPMultiNICB resource depends on. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "MultiNICB_res1"
One of the two attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ NetMask ■ PrefixLen 	See Table 3-10 on page 113.

Table 3-10 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
RouteOptions	Specifies the routing options that are passed to the <code>route add</code> command when the agent configures an interface. The RouteOptions attribute value is generally formed like this: " <i>destination gateway metric</i> ". For details about the <code>route</code> command, refer to the man page for your operating system. When the value of this string is null, the agent does not add routes. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "192.100.201.0 192.100.13.7" In this example, the agent executes the " <code>route add 192.100.201.0 192.100.13.7</code> " command when it configures an interface.
Options	Options for the <code>ifconfig</code> command. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "mtu 1500"

Table 3-10 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
NetMask	<p>The netmask that is associated with the virtual IP address. If you do not specify a netmask, the agent uses the operating system's default netmask.</p> <p>This attribute is required if you configure this resource for IPv4 protocol.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "255.255.255.0"</p>
PrefixLen	<p>This is the prefix for the IPv6 address represented as the CIDR value.</p> <p>When you use the IPv6 protocol, you must configure values for this attribute and the corresponding MultiNICB agent's Device and Protocol attributes.</p> <p>Type-dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Range: 1 - 128</p> <p>Example: 64</p>

Resource type definition for IPMultiNICB agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```
type IPMultiNICB (  
  static int MonitorTimeout = 120  
  static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60  
  static int MonitorInterval = 10  
  static str ArgList[] = { Address, NetMask, MultiNICBResName,  
    "MultiNICBResName:Probed", RouteOptions, PrefixLen, Options }  
  static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=0, PassCInfo=1 }  
  str Address  
  str NetMask  
  str MultiNICBResName  
  str RouteOptions  
  int PrefixLen  
  str Options  
)
```

Sample configurations for IPMultiNICB agent

IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB sample configuration

The sample configuration for the IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB agent follows:

```
group grp1 (
SystemList = { sysa = 0 , sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
MultiNICB MNICB_grp1 (
Device@sysa = { en0 = "10.128.8.42", en1 = "10.128.8.43" }
Device@sysb = { en0 = "10.128.8.44", en1 = "10.128.8.45" }
NetworkHosts = "10.128.8.10"
)
IPMultiNICB ip1 (
Address = "10.128.8.14"
Netmask = "255.255.255.0"
MultiNICBResName = MNICB_grp1
)
ip1 requires MNICB_grp1
group grp2 (
SystemList = { sysa = 0 , sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
IPMultiNICB ip2 (
Address = "10.128.8.15"
Netmask = "255.255.255.0"
MultiNICBResName = MNICB_grp1
)
Proxy MNICB_proxy (
TargetResName = MNICB_grp1
)
ip2 requires MNICB_proxy
```

Other sample configurations for IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB

Refer to the sample configurations in the MultiNICB agent.

Debug log levels for IPMultiNICB agent

The IPMultiNICB agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_4, DBG_5

MultiNICB agent

The MultiNICB agent works with the IPMultiNICB agent. It allows IP addresses to fail over to multiple interfaces on the same system before VCS tries to fail over to another system. You can use the agent to make IP addresses on multiple-adapter systems highly available or to monitor them.

When you use the MultiNICB agent, you must configure the interfaces before putting them under the agent's control. You must configure all the interfaces in a single MultiNICB resource with the base IP addresses that are in the same subnet.

You need to set the MONITOR flag for each interface that the agent controls. Use the `ifconfig` command to set the flag. For example:

```
# ifconfig en0 monitor
```

The haping utility for MultiNICB agent

Use the `haping` utility (`/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/MultiNICB/haping`) to test each interface before you configure the MultiNICB resource. This utility takes the interface as an argument. You can use this utility to perform a link test, a broadcast ping, or to ping a specific remote host. Symantec recommends that the administrator perform a test ping with the remote host before adding it to the `NetworkHosts` parameter. Note that the remote host should be on the same network as the interface from which you are performing the test ping.

Some examples of the command syntax are as follows:

Link test only on interface `en0`:

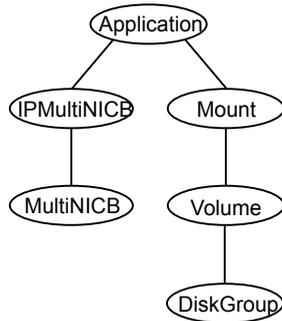
```
haping -l en0
```

Ping a remote host `10.10.10.10` from interface `en0`:

```
haping -g 10.10.10.10 en0
```

Dependencies for MultiNICB agent

The MultiNICB resource does not depend on any other resources.

Figure 3-6 Sample service group that includes a MultiNICB resource

Agent functions for MultiNICB agent

Open	Allocates an internal structure to store information about the resource.
Close	Frees the internal structure that is used to store information about the resource.
Monitor	Checks the status of each physical interface. Writes the status information to the export information file for IPMultiNICB resources to read it.

State definitions for MultiNICB agent

ONLINE	Indicates that one or more of the network interfaces listed in the Device attribute of the resource is in working condition.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the MultiNICB resource is not configured correctly.
FAULTED	Indicates that all of the network interfaces listed in the Device attribute failed.

Attributes for MultiNICB agent

For AIX:

Table 3-11 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
Device	<p>Lists the interfaces that you want the agent to monitor. You can assign a unique base IP address to each interface.</p> <p>Use the AIX SMIT configuration tool to configure the base IP addresses and to make them persistent across reboots.</p> <p>When you use the IPv6 protocol, you must configure the value for this attribute with base IPv6 addresses. You need to also configure the corresponding IPMultiNICB agent's PrefixLen attribute.</p> <p>When a network interface or a network adapter of the type MultiNICB under VCS control is renamed, you must update the value of the Device attribute of the MultiNICB resource.</p> <p>Note: Symantec recommends to offline the service groups containing the network resources before renaming the network interfaces and adapters and to update the VCS configuration to avoid any undesired behaviour.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-association</p> <p>IPv4 example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ { en1 = "10.182.9.34", en2 = "10.182.10.34" } <p>IPv6 example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ { en1 = "2001:db8::1", en2 = "2001:db8::2" }

Table 3-12 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
LinkTestRatio	<p>Controls the frequency of the ping test in relation to the link test. The ping test may be run at a lesser frequency to reduce network traffic.</p> <p>If this attribute is set to 1, packets are sent during every monitor cycle. If this attribute is set to 0, packets are never sent during a monitor cycle. Symantec does not recommend setting the value to zero. The agent determines link status without transmitting any ping packets.</p> <p>For other values greater than 1, packets are sent at a lower frequency. For example, if LinkTestRatio=2, then ping packets are sent out during every other monitor cycle. In other words, packets are sent out half as often than if LinkTestRatio were equal to one.</p> <p>When using IPv6 protocol, set the LinkTestRatio attribute to 0. If you set the attribute to another value, the MultiNICB resource may show unexpected behavior.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 0 Example: 1</p>
NetworkHosts	<p>The NetworkHosts attribute is a list of hosts on the local network that are pinged to determine if the network connection is available. These must be IP addresses, and not host names.</p> <p>If you do not specify this attribute, the agent monitors the interface by pinging the broadcast address on the interface. If you specify one or more network hosts, and at least one host responds to a ping, the agent reports the MultiNICB resource online. The IP addresses for the NetworkHosts attribute must be on the same subnet as the base IP addresses for the MultiNICB resource. If an invalid network host address is specified or if there is mismatch in protocol of the network host and the Protocol attribute of resource, the resource enters an UNKNOWN state.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector Example: { "10.128.8.10" , "10.128.8.45" }</p>

Table 3-12 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
NoBroadcast	<p>If the value of this attribute is 1, NoBroadcast prevents the agent from sending broadcast pings. ARP requests may still be generated.</p> <p>Note: If no NetworkHosts are specified and NoBroadcast is set to 1, the agent cannot function properly. Symantec Corporation does not recommend setting NoBroadcast to 1.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 0</p>
OfflineTestRepeatCount	<p>Number of times the test is repeated if the interface status changes from up to down. For every repetition of the test, the next NetworkHosts attribute is selected in round-robin manner. At the end of this process, broadcast is performed if NoBroadcast is set to 0. A greater value prevents spurious changes, but increases the response time.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 3</p>
OnlineTestRepeatCount	<p>The number of times that the test is repeated if the interface changes from down to up. This test helps to prevent oscillations in the status of the interface.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 3</p>
NetworkTimeout	<p>Timeout for ARP and ICMP packets in milliseconds. MultiNICB waits for the response to ICMP and ARP packets only during this time period.</p> <p>Assign the NetworkTimeout a value in the order of tens of milliseconds, given that the ICMP and ARP destinations must be on the local network. Increasing this value increases the time for failover.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 100</p>

Table 3-12 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
Gateway	IP address for the default gateway on the local network. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "136.22.1.1"

Resource type definition for MultiNICB agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```
type MultiNICB (  
  static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60  
  static int MonitorInterval = 10  
  static str ArgList[] = { Device, NetworkHosts, Gateway,  
  LinkTestRatio, NoBroadcast, NetworkTimeout,  
  OnlineTestRepeatCount, OfflineTestRepeatCount }  
  static str Operations = None  
  str Device{}  
  str NetworkHosts[]  
  str Gateway  
  int LinkTestRatio = 0  
  int NoBroadcast  
  int NetworkTimeout = 100  
  int OnlineTestRepeatCount = 3  
  int OfflineTestRepeatCount = 3  
)
```

Trigger script for MultiNICB agent

MultiNICB monitor agent function calls a VCS trigger in case of an interface going up or down.

The agent passes the following arguments to the script:

- MultiNICB resource name
- The device whose status changed, for example:
 - en0
- The device's previous status (0 for down, 1 for up)
- The device's current status and monitor heartbeat

The agent also sends a notification (which may be received via SNMP or SMTP) to indicate that status of an interface changed. The notification is sent using "health of a cluster resource declined" and "health of a cluster resource improved" traps. These traps are mentioned in the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*. A sample `mnicb_postchange` trigger is provided with the agent. You can customize this sample script as needed or write one from scratch.

The sample script does the following:

- If interface changes status, it prints a message to the console, for example:

```
MultiNICB agent Res. Name: Device en0 status
changed from Down to Up.
```

Sample configurations for MultiNICB agent

IPMultiNICB and MultiNICB configuration for MultiNICB agent

```
group grp1 (
SystemList = { sysa = 0 , sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
MultiNICB MNICB_grp1 (
Device@sysa = { en0 = "10.128.8.42", en1 = "10.128.8.43" }
Device@sysb = { en0 = "10.128.8.44", en1 = "10.128.8.45" }
NetworkHosts = { "10.128.8.10", "10.128.8.11" }
LinkTestRatio = 1
)
IPMultiNICB ip1 (
Address = "10.128.8.14"
Netmask = "255.255.255.0"
MultiNICBResName = MNICB_grp1
)
ip1 requires MNICB_grp1
group grp2 (
SystemList = { sysa = 0 , sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
IPMultiNICB ip2 (
Address = "10.128.8.15"
Netmask = "255.255.255.0"
MultiNICBResName = MNICB_grp1
)
```

```
Proxy MNICB_proxy (  
  TargetResName = MNICB_grp1  
)  
ip2 requires MNICB_proxy
```

Debug log levels for MultiNICB agent

The MultiNICB agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

DNS agent

The DNS agent updates and monitors the mapping for the following:

- The host name to IP address (A, AAAA, or PTR record)
- Alias to hostname or canonical name (CNAME)

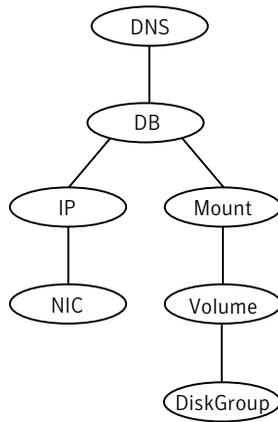
The agent performs these tasks for a DNS zone when failing over nodes across subnets (a wide-area failover). Resource records (RR) can include different types: A, AAAA, CNAME, and PTR records.

Use the DNS agent if the Resource Records need to be dynamically added and deleted from the DNS servers during failover. The agent updates the name server with the new resource record mappings while failing over and allows the clients to connect to the failed over instance of the application.

For important information about this agent, refer to [Agent notes for DNS agent](#)

Dependencies for DNS agent

No dependencies exist for the DNS resource.

Figure 3-7 Sample service group that includes a DNS resource

Agent functions for DNS agent

Online	<p>Updates one or more name servers with the resource records.</p> <p>The agent updates the name servers defined in the StealthMasters attribute. If you have not configured this attribute then the agent obtains the name of the master server by sending an Start of Authority (SOA) query. This query retrieves the SOA record of the zone defined in the agent's Domain attribute. This SOA record contains the name of the master server.</p> <p>The agent creates PTR records for each RR of type A or AAAA if the value of the CreatePTR attribute is true. A prerequisite for this feature is that the same master or stealth server serves the forward (A or AAAA) and reverse zones.</p> <p>Finally the agent generates an Online lock file to indicate that the resource is online on the current system.</p> <p>Note: The DNS agent does not send any update for a resource record if it is already present on the name server.</p>
Offline	<p>Removes the Online lock file.</p> <p>If attribute OffDelRR is true, offline removes all records that the ResRecord keys define.</p>

Monitor	<p>Returns the ONLINE state if at least one name server reports all mappings that ResRecord defines. The name servers are the master or StealthMaster servers and all the servers for which an NS record for the zone exists.</p> <p>The monitor entry point also sends periodic refresh requests to DNS server if the RefreshInterval attribute is set.</p>
Clean	<p>Removes the Online lock file, if it exists. If attribute OffDeIRR is true, clean removes all records that the ResRecord keys define.</p>
Open	<p>Removes the Online lock file if the resource is reported online on another node inside the cluster to prevent concurrency violation. If the lock file exists, at least one name server has to report all the records that the ResRecord attribute defines. If all the name servers fail to report all the records, the agent function removes the Online lock file.</p>
Action	<p>Different action agent functions follow:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ keyfile.vfd This action entry point checks if the key file as specified in the TSIGKeyFile attribute exists either locally or on shared storage.■ dig.vfd This action entry point checks if dig and nsupdate binaries exist and are executable.■ master.vfd This action entry point checks if stealth masters are able to reply to SOA query for the configured domain.

State definitions for DNS agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

ONLINE	<p>Online lock file exists and at least one name server can return all configured resource records.</p>
OFFLINE	<p>At least one of the following is true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ The online lock does not exist.■ None of the name servers can report all of the RRs' mappings.
UNKNOWN	<p>Indicates that the DNS resource is not configured correctly. Can indicate that the resource record list contains an invalid value as a part of the record key or a record value of the ResRecord attribute.</p>

Attributes for DNS agent

Table 3-13 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
Domain	<p>A string representing the DNS zone that the agent administers.</p> <p>The domain name can only contain alphanumeric symbols and the dash.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Forward mapping: "demo.example.com"■ IPv4 reverse mapping: "2.168.192.in-addr.arpa"

Table 3-13 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
ResRecord	

Table 3-13 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
	<p>ResRecord is an association of DNS resource record values. Each ResRecord attribute consists of two values: <i>DNS record key</i> = <i>DNS record data</i>. Note that the record key must be a unique value.</p> <p>If the resource record list contains any invalid value as a part of the record key or a record data of the ResRecord attribute, the resource reports an UNKNOWN state.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-association</p> <p>Examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ For forward mapping, where the zone is demo.example.com: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - aix901 = "192.168.2.191" - ww2 = aix901 - aix9ip6 = "2007::1:2:3:abc" ■ For a multi-home DNS record, typically for one host with two network interfaces and different addresses, but the same DNS name. The A type ResRecord configuration should be as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> aix902 = "192.168.2.102 10.87.13.22" A multi-home AAAA DNS record can be configured as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> aix902 = "1234::5678 1234::AABB:CCDD" ■ For reverse IPv4 address mapping, where the zone is 2.168.192.in-addr.arpa: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 191 = "aix901.demo.example.com" ■ For reverse IPv6 address mapping, where the zone is 3.0.0.0.2.0.0.0.1.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.0.7.0.0.2.ip6.arpa: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> cba = "aix9ip6.demo.example.com" <p>Use only partial host names. If you use a fully qualified domain name, append a period "." at the end of the name.</p> <p>For CNAME records, use:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ResRecord = { www = mydesktop } or ■ ResRecord = { www = "mydesktop.marketing.example.com." } <p>Where the Domain attribute is "marketing.example.com"</p> <p>The agent uses case-insensitive pattern matching—and a combination of the Domain and ResRecord attribute values—to determine the resource record type. The RR types are as</p>

Table 3-13 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
	<p>follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ PTR: if the Domain attribute ends with .arpa ■ A: if the record data field is an IPv4 address (four sets of numbers, where a period separates each set. The following details the pattern it tries to match: [1-223].[0-255].[0-255].[0-255] Hexadecimal is not supported.) ■ AAAA: if the record data fields are in multiple sets of hexadecimal format, then this record is an IPv6 associated type AAAA record. ■ CNAME: for any other valid record data. <p>Note: If a name in the ResRecord attribute does not comply with RFC 1035, then the agent logs a warning message to the engine log file. This ResRecord association is not used. As an exception to this, the DNS agent allows underscore character ("_") in hostnames. Make sure that the DNS server supports the underscore character before you configure any DNS resource records to have the underscore character in their hostnames.</p>

Table 3-14 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
TTL	<p>This attribute (a non-zero integer) represents the Time To Live (TTL) value, in seconds, for the DNS entries in the zone that you want to update.</p> <p>A lower value means more hits on your DNS server, while a higher value means more time for your clients to learn about changes.</p> <p>The TTL may take the value 0, which indicates never caching the record, to a maximum of 2,147,483,647, which is over 68 years! The current best practice recommendation (RFC 1912) proposes a value greater than one day, and on RRs that do not change often, consider multi-week values.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 86400</p> <p>Example: 3600</p>

Table 3-14 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
StealthMasters	<p>The list of primary master name servers in the domain.</p> <p>This attribute is optional since the first name server is retrieved from the zone's SOA (Start of Authority) record.</p> <p>If the primary master name server is a stealth server, define this attribute. A stealth server is a name server that is authoritative for a zone, but does not appear in that zone's SOA record. It is hidden to prevent direct attacks from the Internet.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: { "10.190.112.23" }</p>
TSIGKeyFile	<p>Required when you configure DNS for secure updates. Specifies the absolute path to the file containing the private TSIG (Transaction Signature) key. This attribute should be configured only when the DNS server configured is a Unix based DNS server.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>/var/tsig/example.com.+157+00000.private</pre>
CreatePTR	<p>Use the CreatePTR attribute to direct the online agent functions to create PTR records for each RR of type A or AAAA. You must set the value of this attribute to true (1) to create the records. Before you can use this attribute, make sure that the same master or stealth servers serve the forward (A or AAAA) and reverse zones.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 1</p>
OffDelRR	<p>Use the OffDelRR attribute to direct the offline and clean agent functions to remove all records that the ResRecord key defines. You must set the value of this attribute to 1 (true) to have the agent remove all the records.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 1</p>

Table 3-14 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
UseGSSAPI	<p>Use the UseGSSAPI attribute if the DNS server that you have configured is a Windows DNS server and only if it accepts secure dynamic updates.</p> <p>Note: Do not set this attribute if the Windows DNS server accepts non-secure updates.</p> <p>If this attribute is set to 1, the agent uses the -g option with the nsupdate command.</p> <p>See “Agent notes for DNS agent” on page 132. for more information on requirements to use the DNS agent with the secure Windows DNS server.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 1</p>
RefreshInterval	<p>This attribute represents the time interval in seconds after which the DNS agent attempts to refresh the resource records (RRs) on the DNS servers. The default value of zero indicates that the DNS agent does not attempt to refresh the records on the DNS servers. The DNS agent writes the warning message to the logs if it is not able to refresh the DNS records.</p> <p>Note: The refresh request is sent in the next monitor cycle after the RefreshInterval period is reached.</p> <p>If the DNS agent is unable to refresh the DNS records, and the records are removed as a result of a scavenging operation or by the DNS administrator, the DNS resource will fault.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 3600</p>

Table 3-14 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
CleanRRKeys	<p>Use this attribute to direct the online agent function to clean up all the existing DNS records for the configured keys before adding new records. The default value (0) disables this behavior.</p> <p>Note: If multiple DNS resources are configured with the same key value in their ResRecord attribute, then do not set this attribute value to 1.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 1</p>

Resource type definition for DNS agent

The resource definition for this agent on AIX follows:

```

type DNS (
    static keylist SupportedActions = { "dig.vfd",
    "master.vfd", "keyfile.vfd" }
    static str ArgList[] = { Domain, TTL,
    TSIGKeyFile, StealthMasters, ResRecord, CreatePTR,
    OffDelRR, UseGSSAPI, RefreshInterval, CleanRRKeys }
    str Domain
    int TTL = 86400
    str TSIGKeyFile
    str StealthMasters[]
    str ResRecord{}
    boolean CreatePTR = 0
    boolean OffDelRR = 0
    boolean UseGSSAPI = 0
    int RefreshInterval = 0
    boolean CleanRRKeys = 0
)

```

Agent notes for DNS agent

The DNS agent has the following notes:

- [About using the VCS DNS agent on UNIX with a secure Windows DNS server](#)
- [High availability fire drill for DNS agent](#)

- [Monitor scenarios for DNS agent](#)
- [Sample Web server configuration for DNS agent](#)
- [Secure DNS update for BIND 9 for DNS agent](#)
- [Setting up secure updates using TSIG keys for BIND 9 for DNS agent](#)

About using the VCS DNS agent on UNIX with a secure Windows DNS server

This section describes the requirements for using the DNS agent with a secure Windows DNS server. Note that there are no special requirements for sending non-secure updates to a Windows DNS server.

Software requirement for DNS agent

For the secure updates on Windows DNS server to work, the VCS DNS agent on UNIX requires BIND version 9.7.2-P3 or later installed on all cluster nodes.

Configuration requirement for DNS agent

The VCS DNS agent on UNIX requires setting up Kerberos authentication with the Windows DNS server and configuring the domain and DNS server information in `/etc/resolv.conf` at the client node.

To set up the Kerberos authentication from the UNIX host to the Windows DNS server, configure the Kerberos configuration file (`/etc/krb5.conf` or `/etc/krb/krb5.conf`) to use the Windows DNS server as Key Distribution Centre (KDC).

A sample Kerberos configuration file with domain `privdns.sym` and DNS server `master.privdns.sym` is as follows:

```
[libdefaults]
default_realm = PRIVDNS.SYM
dns_lookup_realm = true
dns_lookup_kdc = true
default_tkt_enctypes = des-cbc-md5
default_tgs_enctypes = des-cbc-md5
ticket_lifetime = 24h
renew_lifetime = 7d
forwardable = true
allow_weak_crypto = true
[realms]
PRIVDNS.SYM = {
kdc = master.privdns.sym:88
kpasswd_server = master.privdns.sym:464
admin_server = master.privdns.sym
```

```
}  
[domain_realm]  
.privdns.sym = PRIVDNS.SYM  
privdns.sym = PRIVDNS.SYM
```

Note: Symantec does not support KDC and Domain Controller/DNS located on different servers.

Authenticate all the nodes on the cluster (on which the DNS agent is configured to run) with the Active directory. Use kinit on your user account and use klist to verify that you have a ticket to the configured realm principal. Refer to the man page of kinit for more information on obtaining Kerberos ticket granting tickets from KDC.

Note: The DNS agent requires a node to be authenticated with Kerberos all the time. Renew the obtained tickets periodically if your authentication method requires you to do so.

A sample run of kinit and klist for the above configuration with user vcsdns will look as follows:

```
# kinit vcsdns  
Password for vcsdns@PRIVDNS.SYM:  
# klist  
Ticket cache: FILE:/tmp/krb5cc_0  
Default principal: vcsdns@PRIVDNS.SYM  
Valid starting Expires Service principal  
12/14/09 16:17:37 12/15/09 02:19:09 krbtgt/PRIVDNS.SYM@PRIVDNS.SYM  
renew until 12/21/09 16:17:37
```

If the environment variable KRB5CCNAME is set to some non-default location (default is /tmp), then VCS will not inherit it by default and will look for the Kerberos tickets in default location /tmp.

To resolve this issue, un-set the environment variable KRB5CCNAME and run the kinit command again. This will update the Kerberos tickets in default location (/tmp). Else, for a customized location (for example, /cache/krb_ticket) for Kerberos tickets, add an entry in opt/VRTSvcs/bin/vcsenv file on each cluster node before VCS starts:

```
KRB5CCNAME="FILE:/cache/krb_ticket"  
export KRB5CCNAME
```

Update `/etc/resolv.conf` on your client node to add information for the Windows DNS server and the configured domain.

High availability fire drill for DNS agent

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node; discrepancies that might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node.

For DNS resources, the high availability drill tests the following conditions:

- Checks if the key file as specified by the `TSIGKeyFile` attribute is available either locally or on shared storage.
- Checks if the `dig` and `nsupdate` binaries are available on the cluster node and are executable on that node.
- Checks if the stealth masters can respond to the SOA query made from the cluster node so as to ensure that there is no network issue that would prohibit the DNS update and query requests from reaching the stealth master server.

For more information about using the high availability fire drill see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Monitor scenarios for DNS agent

Depending on the existence of the Online lock file and the defined Resource Records (RR), you get different status messages from the Monitor function.

[Table 3-15](#) summarizes the monitor scenarios for the Online lock files.

Table 3-15 Monitor scenarios for the Online lock file

Online lock file exists	Expected RR mapping	Monitor returns
NO	N/A	OFFLINE
YES	NO	OFFLINE
YES	YES	ONLINE

Sample Web server configuration for DNS agent

Take the example of a Web server. A browser requests the URL `http://www.example.com` that maps to the canonical name `server1.example.com`. The browser retrieves the IP address for the web server by querying a domain name server. If the web server fails over from server one to server two (`server2.example.com`), the domain name servers need a new canonical name

mapping for `www.example.com`. After the failover, the DNS resource updates this mapping of `www.example.com` to point to canonical name `server2.example.com`

Note: In this configuration, the Domain attribute should be configured with value "example.com"

Secure DNS update for BIND 9 for DNS agent

The DNS agent expects that the zone's allow-update field contains the IP address for the hosts that can dynamically update the DNS records. This functionality is default for the DNS agent. Since a competent black hat can, however, spoof IP addresses, consider TSIG as an alternative.

TSIG (Transaction Signature) as specified in RFC 2845 is a shared key message authentication mechanism that is available in BIND DNS. A TSIG key provides the means to authenticate and verify the validity of exchanged DNS data. It uses a shared secret key between a resolver and either one or two servers to provide security.

Setting up secure updates using TSIG keys for BIND 9 for DNS agent

In the following example, the domain is `example.com`.

To use secure updates using TSIG keys, perform the following steps at the DNS server:

- 1 Run the `dnssec-keygen` command with the HMAC-MD5 option to generate a pair of files that contain the TSIG key:

```
# dnssec-keygen -a HMAC-MD5 -b 128 -n HOST example.com.
```

- 2 Open the `example.com.+157+00000.key` file. After you run the `cat` command, the contents of the file resembles:

```
# cat example.com.+157+00000.key
example.com. IN KEY 512 3 157 +Cdjlkef9ZTSeixERZ433Q==
```

- 3 Copy the shared secret (the TSIG key), which looks like:

```
+Cdjlkef9ZTSeixERZ433Q==
```

- 4 Configure the DNS server to only allow TSIG updates using the generated key. Open the `named.conf` file and add these lines.

```
key example.com. {  
    algorithm hmac-md5;  
    secret "+Cdjlkef9ZTSeixERZ433Q==";  
};
```

Where `+Cdjlkef9ZTSeixERZ433Q==` is the key.

- 5 In the `named.conf` file, edit the appropriate zone section and add the `allow-updates` sub-statement to reference the key:

```
allow-update { key example.com. ; } ;
```

- 6 Save and restart the `named` process.
- 7 Place the files containing the keys on each of the nodes that are listed in your group's `SystemList`. The DNS agent uses this key to update the name server. Copy both the private and public key files on to the node. A good location is in the `/var/tsig/` directory.
- 8 Set the `TSIGKeyFile` attribute for the DNS resource to specify the file containing the private key.

```
DNS www (  
    Domain = "example.com"  
    ResRecord = {www = north}  
    TSIGKeyFile = "/var/tsig/example.com.+157+00000.private"  
)
```

Sample configurations for DNS agent

This section contains sample configurations for this agent.

Basic IPv6 configuration for DNS agent

This sample configuration provides basic configuration for IPv6 support. In the following configuration, `nic_value` represents the base NIC value for the platform

For example: `en0`

```
group ipv6_group_dns (  
    SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }  
)
```

```
DNS ipv6group_dns_res (
    Critical = 0
    Domain = "example.com"
    TSIGKeyFile = "/var/tsig/Kipv6.vcsd.net.+157+18435.private"
    StealthMasters = { "2001:db8:c18:2:69c4:3251:bac1:6cbe" }
    ResRecord = {
        vcssystemCv6 = "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fe96:8833",
        sysC = vcssystemCv6 }
    )

IP ipv6group_ip_res (
    Device @sysA = nic_value
    Device @sysB = nic_value
    Address = "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fe96:8833"
    PrefixLen = 64
    )

NIC ipv6group_nic_res (
    Device @sysA = nic_value
    Device @sysB = nic_value
    NetworkHosts = { "2001:db8:c18:2:214:4fff:fea2:fd50" }

Protocol = IPv6

)

ipv6group_dns_res requires ipv6group_ip_res
ipv6group_ip_res requires ipv6group_nic_res
```

IPv6 CNAME sample configuration for DNS agent

The following sample configuration uses CNAME values.

```
group cname_group (
    SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
    )

DNS cname_group_dns_res (
    Domain = "example.com"
    StealthMasters = { "3ffe:556::1000:5761" }
    ResRecord @sysA = { www = server1 }
    ResRecord @sysB = { www = server2 }
```

```
        OffDelRR = 1
    )
```

IPv4 A sample configuration for DNS agent

The following sample configuration uses A values.

```
group forwardv4_group (
    SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
)

DNS forward_group_v4_resource (
    Domain = "example.com"
    StealthMasters = { "3ffe:556::1000:5761" }
    ResRecord @sysA = { www = "10.200.56.240" }
    ResRecord @sysB = { www = "10.200.56.244" }
    OffDelRR = 1
)
```

Debug log levels for DNS agent

The DNS agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

File share agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the file service agents](#)
- [NFS agent](#)
- [NFSRestart agent](#)
- [Share agent](#)
- [About the Samba agents](#)
- [SambaServer agent](#)
- [SambaShare agent](#)
- [NetBios agent](#)

About the file service agents

Use the file service agents to provide high availability for file share resources.

NFS agent

Starts and monitors the nfsd and mountd subsystem processes required by all exported NFS file systems.

Note: The attributes NFSv4root and NFSSecurity require AIX 5.3 TL7 SP6 or later and AIX 6.1 TL5 or later.

You should configure only a single NFS resource in a service group on a node. If you have more than one service group that uses the NFS resource, the other service

groups must use a Proxy resource. The Proxy resource can point to the NFS resource in the first group. Duplicate NFS resources will cause a problem when the NFS resources are brought online concurrently—only the NFS resource started first will be successfully brought online, while the rest of the NFS resources may report online failure.

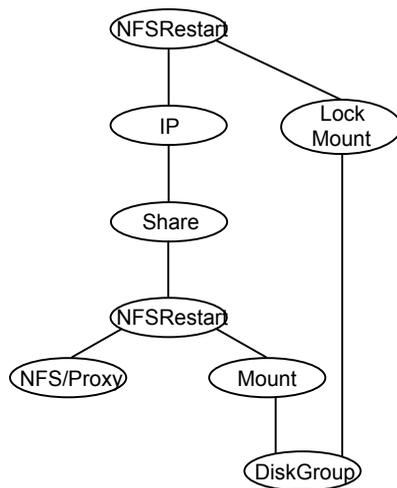
For important information about this agent,

See [“Notes for NFS agent”](#) on page 143.

Dependencies for NFS agent

For more information regarding NFS resource dependencies, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator’s Guide*.

Figure 4-1 Sample service group that includes an NFS resource



Agent functions for NFS agent

- | | |
|---------|---|
| Online | <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Checks if nfsd and mountd are running. If they are not running, the agent starts the daemons and exits.■ The nfsrgyd daemon is started if NFSv4Root is specified.■ The gssd daemon is started if NFSv4Security is set to 1. |
| Offline | Not applicable. |

Monitor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Monitors nfsd and mountd by checking whether or not the daemons are active. ■ The nfsrgyd daemon is monitored if NFSv4Root is specified. ■ The gssd daemon monitored if NFSSecurity is set to 1.
Clean	Stops and restarts nfsd and mountd daemons.

State definitions for NFS agent

ONLINE	Indicates that the NFS daemons are running in accordance with the supported protocols and versions.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the NFS daemons are not running in accordance with the supported protocols and versions.
FAULTED	Indicates that the NFS daemons are not running in accordance with the supported protocols and versions.
UNKNOWN	Unable to determine the status of the NFS daemons.

Attributes for NFS agent

Table 4-1 Optional attributes for AIX

Optional attribute	Description
Nservers	<p>Specifies the number of concurrent NFS requests the server can handle.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 10</p>
NFSv4Root	<p>Root directory of the NFSv4 pseudo file system to be exported. All exports should have a path relative to the path specified by this attribute. You can explicitly create the NFSv4 pseudo file system by specifying the exname option of the <code>exportfs</code> command in the Options attribute of the Share resource.</p> <p>If you want to export file systems with NFSv4 protocols and do not want to explicitly create NFSv4 pseudo file system by using the exname option, then set NFSv4Root to <code>"/</code>.</p> <p>Required for filesystems to be exported with v4 protocol.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>

Table 4-1 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
NFSSecurity	<p>If the value of this attribute is 1, the gssd daemon starts.</p> <p>You must configure the type of security that NFS supports, for example: Kerberos.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
GracePeriod	<p>Specifies the grace period, in seconds, for which the server allows lock recovery.</p> <p>Required for NFS lock recovery.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 90</p>
LockFileTimeout	<p>Specify the amount of time required, in seconds, for the service group to go online. The agent uses this attribute to synchronize the starting and stopping of daemons between multiple service groups.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 180</p> <p>Example: "240"</p>

Resource type definition for NFS agent

```

type NFS (
    static int RestartLimit = 1
    static str ArgList[] = { Nservers, GracePeriod, NFSv4Root,
        NFSSecurity, LockFileTimeout }
    static str Operations = OnOnly
    int Nservers = 10
    int GracePeriod = 90
    str NFSv4Root
    boolean NFSSecurity = 0
    int LockFileTimeout = 180
)

```

Notes for NFS agent

The NFS agent has the following notes:

- [Using NFSv4 on AIX](#)

Using NFSv4 on AIX

For NFS v4 support, you must specify the NFSv4Root attribute. You must include `vers=4` in the Option attribute of the Share resource.

Set up Enterprise Identity Mapping (EIM) in the NFS environment, if:

- Mapping of userids and username is not same on both client and server
- Client and server belong to different domains

If either of the above points are true, and EIM is not set up, the client has minimal rights (`user=nobody, group=nobody`).

If you want to use the NFSv4 security feature, set the NFSv4Security attribute of the NFS resource to 1. Manually configure Kerberos or any other security environment that is supported by NFSv4.

Caveats

You export filesystems with `NFSv4Root="/exp/exports1"`, and you forcefully stop the engine so that exports are still valid and existing. If you change configurations on NFS to set `NFSv4Root="/newexport"`, the NFS Agent is not able to come online with this new root, because the already exported filesystem is using an older NFS pseudo file system root. To avoid this problem bring all Share resources down properly before changing NFSv4Root.

If you create a pseudo file system, a client can access the filesystem. After the NFS server fails over to the other system in the cluster, the client can not see the filesystem. The client needs to remount it.

Sample configurations for NFS agent

On each node in your cluster, you can find sample NFS, NFSRestart, and Share configurations in `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sample_nfs/`.

For more information regarding agent configuration, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Debug log levels for NFS agent

The NFS agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_5

NFSRestart agent

The NFSRestart agent provides the following functionalities:

Manages essential NFS locking services, network status manager, and lock manager.

Manages NFS lock recovery service by recovering the NFS record locks after sudden server crash.

Prevents potential NFS ACK storms by terminating NFS server services before offline of NFS VIP to close all TCP connections with the NFS client.

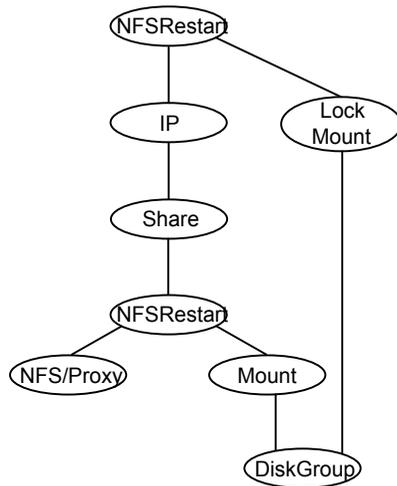
If you have configured the NFSRestart agent for lock recovery, the NFSRestart agent starts the smsyncd daemon. The daemon copies the NFS locks from the local directory `/var/statmon/sm` to shared storage. The agent's online function copies the locks from shared storage to local directory `/var/statmon/sm`.

For important information about this agent, refer to [Notes for NFSRestart agent](#)

Dependencies for NFSRestart agent

For more information regarding NFSRestart resource dependencies, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

You must use two NFSRestart resources in a service group. Both the NFSRestart resources provide combined protection from potential corruption of NFS locks and potential NFS ACK storms. The lower NFSRestart resource must have its Lower attribute set to 1. The upper NFSRestart resource should be at the top of the resource dependency tree and the lower NFSRestart resource should be below the Share resource in the resource dependency tree. The NFSRestart resources and the Share resources must be inside the same service group.

Figure 4-2 Sample service group that includes an NFSRestart resource

Agent functions for NFSRestart agent

The agent functions for this agent follow:

Online

For the lower NFSRestart resource:

- If the value of the NFSLockFailover attribute is 1, the agent terminates statd and lockd.

For the upper NFSRestart resource:

- If the value of the NFSLockFailover attribute is 1, the agent copies the NFS record locks from shared storage to /var/statmon/sm directory.
- Starts the statd and lockd daemons.
- Starts the smsyncd daemon to copy the contents of /var/statmon/sm directory to the shared storage (LocksPathName) at regular two second intervals.

Monitor

For the lower NFSRestart resource:

- The monitor agent function does nothing.

For the upper NFSRestart resource:

- If the value of the NFSLockFailover attribute is 1, the agent monitors smsyncd daemon. It restarts the smsyncd daemon if it is not running.
- Monitors the statd and lockd daemons

Offline	<p>For the lower NFSRestart resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Restarts all the NFS daemons that the upper NFSRestart resource stopped previously. <p>For the upper NFSRestart resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Terminates the statd and lockd daemons to clear the lock state.■ Terminates the nfsd and mountd daemons to close the TCP/IP connections.■ Terminates the smsyncd daemon if the daemon is running.
Clean	<p>For the lower NFSRestart resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Restarts all the NFS daemons that the upper NFSRestart resource stopped previously. <p>For the upper NFSRestart resource:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Terminates the statd and lockd daemons to clear the lock state.■ Terminates the nfsd and mountd daemons to close the TCP/IP connections.■ Terminates the smsyncd daemon if the daemon is running.
Action	<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ nfsconf.vfd Checks the runlevel information of the system service nfslock to confirm that the lock daemons do not come online automatically after reboot.■ lockdir.vfd Verifies that the NFS lock directory (which is specified by the LocksPathName attribute of NFSRestart) is on shared storage.

State definitions

ONLINE	Indicates that the daemons are running properly.
OFFLINE	Indicates that one or more daemons are not running.
UNKNOWN	Indicates the inability to determine the agent's status.

Attributes for NFSRestart agent

Table 4-2 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
NFSRes	Name of the NFS resource on the system. Type and dimension: string-scalar

Table 4-3 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
LocksPathName	The path name of the directory to store the NFS lock information. This attribute is required when the value of the NFSLockFailover attribute is 1. The path that you specify for the LocksPathName attribute should be on shared storage. This is to ensure that it is accessible to all the systems where the NFSRestart resource fails over. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/share1x"
NFSLockFailover	A flag that specifies whether the user wants NFS locks to be recovered after a failover. Type and dimension: boolean-scalar Default: 0
Lower	Defines the position of NFSRestart resource in the service group. The NFSRestart resource below the Share resource needs a value of 1. The NFSRestart resource on the top of the resource dependency tree has a Lower attribute value of 0. Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 0

Resource type definition for NFSRestart agent

```
type NFSRestart (
    static keylist SupportedActions = { "lockdir.vfd", "nfsconf.vfd" }
    static str ArgList[] = { NFSLockFailover, LocksPathName,
        "NFSRes:GracePeriod", "NFSRes:LockFileTimeout",
        "NFSRes:Nservers", "NFSRes:NFSv4Root", Lower, State }
    str LocksPathName
```

```
    str NFSRes  
    int Lower  
    boolean NFSLockFailover = 0  
)
```

Notes for NFSRestart agent

The NFSRestart agent has the following notes:

- [About high availability fire drill](#)
- [Providing a fully qualified host name](#)

About high availability fire drill

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node; discrepancies that might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node.

For NFSRestart resources, the high availability drill performs the following, it:

- Checks the NFS configuration file to confirm that the NFS server does not come online automatically after reboot.
- Verifies that the NFS lock directory (which is specified by the LocksPathName attribute of NFSRestart) is on shared storage.

For more information about using the high availability fire drill see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Providing a fully qualified host name

You must provide a fully qualified host name, for example, (nfsserver.example.edu), for the NFS server while mounting the file system on the NFS client. NFS lock recovery may fail if you do not use a fully qualified host name, or if you use a virtual IP address (10.122.12.25) or partial host name (nfsserver).

If you want to use the virtual IP address or a partial host name, make the following changes to the service database (hosts) and the netshvc.conf files:

Changes in `/etc/hosts` file

To use the virtual IP address and partial host name for the NFS server, you need to add an entry to the `/etc/hosts` file. The virtual IP address and the partial host name should resolve to the fully qualified host name. Make the following changes:

Changes in `/etc/netshvc.conf` file

You should also modify the hosts entry in this file so that upon resolving a name locally, the host does not first contact NIS/DNS, but instead immediately returns a

successful status. Changing the `netshvc.conf` file might affect other services running on the system.

For example:

```
hosts = local,bind,nis
```

You have to make sure that the NFS client stores the same information for the NFS server as the client uses while mounting the file system. For example, if the NFS client mounts the file system using fully qualified domain names for the NFS server, then the `/var/statmon/sm` directory on the NFS client should also contain a fully qualified domain name of the NFS server after the acquisition of locks. Otherwise you need to stop and start the status daemon and lock daemon to clear the lock cache of the NFS client.

A time period exists where the virtual IP address is online but locking services are not registered on the server. Any NFS client trying to acquire a lock in this interval would fail and get ENOLCK error.

Every two seconds, the `smSyncd` daemon copies the list of clients that hold the locks on the shared filesystem in the service group. If the service group fails before `smSyncd` has a chance to copy the client list, the clients may not get a notification once the service group is brought up. This causes NFS lock recovery failure.

Sample configurations for NFSRestart agent

On each node in your cluster, you can find sample NFS, NFSRestart, and Share configurations in `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sample_nfs/`.

For more information regarding agent configuration, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Basic agent configurations

For NFS lock recovery:

```
NFSRestart nfsrestart (
NFSRes = nfsres
LocksPathName="/shared_mnt/lockinfo"
NFSLockFailover = 1
Lower = 0
)
NFSRestart nfsrestart_L (
NFSRes = nfsres
LocksPathName="/shared_mnt/lockinfo"
NFSLockFailover = 1
```

```
Lower = 1  
)
```

For no NFS lock recovery:

```
NFSRestart nfsrestart (  
NFSRes = nfsres  
)  
NFSRestart nfsrestart_L (  
NFSRes = nfsres  
Lower = 1  
)
```

Debug log levels for NFSRestart agent

The NFSRestart agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

Share agent

Shares, unshares, and monitors a single local resource for exporting an NFS file system to be mounted by remote systems.

Before you use this agent, verify that the files and directories to be exported are on shared disks.

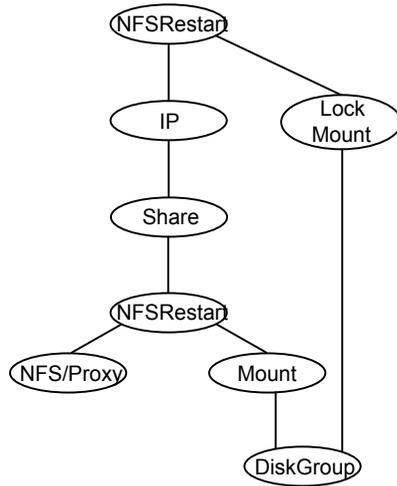
For important information on this agent, refer to:

[Notes for Share agent](#)

Dependencies for Share agent

For more information regarding Share resource dependencies, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Share resources depend on NFS. In an NFS service group, the IP family of resources depends on Share resources.

Figure 4-3 Sample service group that include a Share resource

Agent functions for Share agent

Online	Exports (shares) a directory to the specified client.
Offline	Unshares the exported directory from the client.
Monitor	Verifies that the shared directory is exported to the client.
Clean	Terminates all ongoing resource actions and takes the resource offline, forcibly when necessary.
Action	<p>direxists.vfd</p> <p>Checks if the path specified by the PathName attribute exists on the cluster node. If the path name is not specified, it checks if a corresponding mount point is available to ensure that the path is on shared storage.</p>

State definitions for Share agent

ONLINE	Indicates that specified directory is exported to the client.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the specified directory is not exported to the client.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent could not determine the state of the resource or that the resource attributes are invalid.

FAULTED Indicates that specified directory is unshared outside the control of VCS.

Attributes for Share agent

Table 4-4 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
PathName	Pathname of the file system to be shared. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/share1x"
NFSRes	This attribute has been deprecated.

Table 4-5 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
Options	Options to the <code>exportfs</code> command. When specifying multiple options, separate them with commas, for example: "rw,vers=4" For more information about the <code>exportfs</code> command and its options, refer to the <code>exportfs</code> manpage. Type and dimension: string-vector

Resource type definition for Share agent

```
type Share (
    static keylist SupportedActions = { "direxists.vfd" }
    static str ArgList[] = { PathName, Options }
    str PathName
    str Options
)
```

Notes for Share agent

The following section contains notes on the Share agent.

- [High availability fire drill](#)

High availability fire drill

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node. These discrepancies might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node. For Share resources, the high availability fire drill checks if the path exists.

For more information about using the high availability fire drill see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Sample configurations for Share agent

On each node in your cluster, you can find sample NFS, NFSRestart, and Share configurations in `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sample_nfs/`.

For more information regarding agent configuration, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Debug log levels for Share agent

The Share agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1

About the Samba agents

Samba is a suite of programs that allows a system running a UNIX or UNIX-like operating system to provide services using the Microsoft network protocol. Samba supports the following services:

- Filespace
- Printer
- WINS
- Domain Master

Configure these services in the Samba configuration file (`smb.conf`). Samba uses two processes: `smbd` and `nmbd` to provide these services.

VCS provides Samba failover using three agents: `SambaServer`, `NetBios`, and `SambaShare`.

The Samba agents

- The NetBios agent

- The SambaServer agent
- The SambaShare agent

Before using the Samba agents

- Verify that `smbd` and `nmbd` always run as daemons. Verify that they cannot be started using the meta-daemon `inetd`.
- Verify that Samba is configured properly and that the Samba configuration file is identical on all cluster systems. The user can replicate the file or store it on a shared disk accessible from all cluster systems.
- If configuring Samba as a WINS server or Domain Master, verify that the Samba lock directory is on the shared disk. This ensures that the WINS server database and Domain Master are created on the shared disk.

Supported versions for Samba agents

VCS Samba suite of agents support Samba version 3.0 and above. Please check your samba version using the following command:

```
# smbd -V
```

Notes for configuring the Samba agents

The following notes describe configuration considerations for the Samba agents.

Configuring multiple SambaServer resources

For configuring multiple SambaServer resources, configure the `SocketAddress` attribute with the unique value of the address where the respective samba daemon listens for connections. Configure the SambaServer resource as a parent resource of the IP resource. Configure this IP resource with the `SocketAddress` attribute value.

Configuring Samba for non-standard configuration files or non-standard lock directories

Configure the `PidFile` attribute if you use a non-standard configuration file for Samba or if the lock directory (the directory where Samba pid file resides) for Samba is different than the default location. Use the following command to check the standard locations for the Samba configuration file and the lock directory:

To check for the default value of the Samba configuration file

- ◆ Enter the following command:

```
# smbd -b | grep CONFIGFILE
```

To check for the default location of the Samba pidfile

- ◆ Enter the following command:

```
# smbd -b | grep PIDDIR
```

SambaServer agent

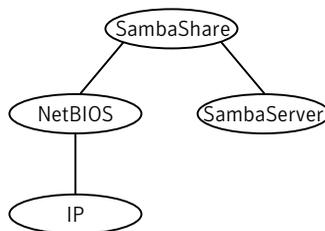
The SambaServer agent starts, stops, and monitors the smbd process as a daemon. Only one resource of this type is permitted. You can use the agent to make a smbd daemon highly available.

The smbd daemon provides Samba share services. The agent verifies that Samba is running by reading the pid of smbd daemon. The agent can perform in-depth monitoring by establishing a socket connection to Samba at ports where the daemon is listening and sending it a NetBIOS session request.

Dependencies for SambaServer agent

No dependencies exist for the SambaServer resource.

Figure 4-4 Sample service group that includes a SambaServer resource



Agent functions for SambaServer agent

Online	Starts the smbd daemon at specified or default ports.
Offline	Stops the smbd daemon.
Monitor	Verifies that the smbd daemon is running by reading its pid file. Does in-depth monitoring periodically, if configured, by establishing a socket connection to Samba and sending it a NetBIOS session request.

Clean Stops the smbd daemon forcefully if required.

State definitions for SambaServer agent

ONLINE	Indicates that the smbd daemon is running. If in-depth monitoring is configured, it indicates that a positive session response packet was received through a socket connection to the Samba server.
OFFLINE	Indicates that smbd is not running. If in-depth monitoring is enabled, it indicates that the agent could not establish a socket connection with the server, or that it received an incorrect response packet header, or the session response packet connection timed out.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent could not determine the state of the resource.
FAULTED	Indicates that the smbd daemon has stopped unexpectedly or is not responding (if in-depth monitoring is enabled) outside of VCS control.

Attributes for SambaServer agent

Table 4-6 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
ConfFile	Complete path of the configuration file that Samba uses. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/etc/sfw/smb.conf"
LockDir	Lock directory of Samba. Samba stores the files smbd.pid, nmbd.pid, wins.dat (WINS database), and browse.dat (master browser database) in this directory. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/usr/local/samba/var/locks"

Table 4-6 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
SambaTopDir	<p>Parent path of Samba daemon and binaries.</p> <p>SambaServer agent uses SambaTopDir attribute value in an open entry point to determine the complete path of samba executables. If this attribute is configured after the resource is enabled, please disable and enable the resource again to bring this into effect as follows:</p> <pre># hares -modify <res> Enabled 0 # hares -modify <res> Enabled 1</pre> <p>Example: "/usr/local/samba"</p>

Table 4-7 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
IndepthMonitorCyclePeriod	<p>Number of monitor cycles after which the in-depth monitoring is performed. For example, the value 5 indicates that the agent monitors the resource in-depth every five monitor cycles. The value 0 indicates that the agent will not perform in-depth monitoring for the resource.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 5</p>
Ports	<p>Ports where Samba accepts connections.</p> <p>To run Samba over NBT (NetBios over TCP/IP), set this attribute to 139. To run Samba directly over TCP/IP, set this attribute to 445.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-vector</p> <p>Default: 139, 445</p>
ResponseTimeout	<p>Number of seconds the agent waits to receive the session response packet after sending the session request packet. For example, the value 5 indicates that the agent waits for five seconds before receiving the session response packet. Configure this attribute if in-depth monitoring is enabled.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 10</p>

Table 4-7 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
PidFile	<p>The absolute path to the Samba daemon pid file. This file contains the process ID of the monitored smbd process.</p> <p>Configure this attribute if you are using a non-standard configuration file name or path. If this attribute is not configured for non-standard configuration file names, the agent checks the <code>smbd-ConfFile.pid</code> file for monitoring the resource.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: <code>"/usr/local/samba/var/locks/smbd.pid"</code></p>
SocketAddress	<p>The IP address where the Samba daemon (smbd) listens for connections. Configure the SocketAddress attribute if you are configuring multiple SambaServer resources on a node.</p> <p>Note: Only IPv4 addresses are supported.</p> <p>Type and Dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: <code>"10.128.10.14"</code></p>

Resource type definitions for SambaServer agent

```

type SambaServer (
  static str ArgList[] = { ConfFile, SambaTopDir, LockDir, Ports,
    IndepthMonitorCyclePeriod, ResponseTimeout, PidFile,
    SocketAddress }
  str ConfFile
  str LockDir
  int Ports[] = { 139, 445 }
  int IndepthMonitorCyclePeriod = 5
  int ResponseTimeout = 10
  str SambaTopDir
  str PidFile
  str SocketAddress
)

```

Sample configurations for SambaServer agent

The sample configurations for this agent follow:

```

SambaServer samba_server (
  ConfFile = "/etc/smb.conf"
  LockDir = "/usr/local/samba/var/locks"
)

```

```
SambaTopDir = "/usr/local/samba"  
IndepthMonitorCyclePeriod = 3  
ResponseTimeout = 15  
)
```

Debug log levels for SambaServer agent

The SambaServer agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

SambaShare agent

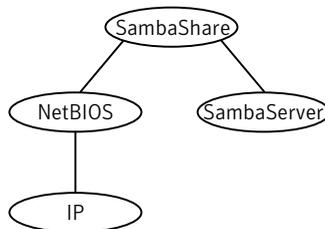
The SambaShare agent adds, removes, and monitors a share by modifying the specified Samba configuration file. You can use the agent to make a Samba Share highly available.

Each filesystem service provided by Samba is a shared resource and is defined as a section in the Samba configuration file. The section name is the name of the shared resource and the section parameters define the share attributes.

Dependencies for SambaShare agent

SambaShare resources depend on the SambaServer, NetBIOS and Mount resources.

Figure 4-5 Sample service group for a SambaShare resource



Agent functions for SambaShare agent

Online	Edits the samba configuration file and adds the shares.
Offline	Removes the shares from the configuration file.
Monitor	Issues the command <code>smbclient</code> to check if the specified shares exist.

Clean Terminates all ongoing connections with the particular samba share, removes its entry from the samba configuration file and reloads the configuration.

State definitions for SambaShare agent

ONLINE Indicates that the share is available.

OFFLINE Indicates that the share is not available.

FAULTED Indicates that the share has become unavailable outside of VCS control.

UNKNOWN Indicates that the agent could not determine the state of the resource.

Attributes for SambaShare agent

Table 4-8 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
SambaServerRes	Name of the SambaServer resource. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "smb_res1"
ShareName	Name of the share resource as exported by samba. Note: This name can be different from the SambaShare resource name. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "share1"
ShareOptions	List of parameters for the share attributes. These parameters are specified as name=value pairs, with each pair separated by a semicolon (;). Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "path=/shared; public=yes; writable=yes"

Resource type definition for SambaShare agent

```
type SambaShare (
  static str ArgList[] = { "SambaServerRes:ConfFile",
    "SambaServerRes:SambaTopDir", "SambaServerRes:LockDir",
```

```
ShareName, ShareOptions, "SambaServerRes:Ports",  
SambaServerRes, "SambaServerRes:PidFile",  
"SambaServerRes:SocketAddress" }  
str SambaServerRes  
str ShareName  
str ShareOptions  
)
```

Sample configuration for SambaShare agent

```
SambaShare Samba_SambaShare3 (  
SambaServerRes = Samba_SambaServer  
ShareName = smbshare3  
ShareOptions = "path=/smbshare3; public=yes; writable=yes"  
)
```

Debug log levels for SambaShare agent

The SambaShare agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_3, DBG_5

NetBios agent

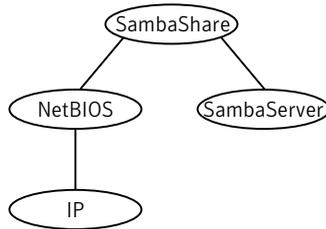
The NetBios agent starts, stops, and monitors the nmbd daemon. Only one resource of this type is permitted. You can use the agent to make the nmbd daemon highly available.

The agent sets, monitors, and resets the names and network interfaces by which the Samba server is known. The agent also sets, monitors and resets Samba to act as a WINS server or domain master or both.

Note: The nmbd broadcasts the NetBIOS name, or the name by which the Samba server is known in the network.

Dependencies for NetBios agent

The NetBios resource depends on the IP, IPMultiNIC, or IPMultiNICB resource if the virtual IP address configured in the IP/IPMultiNIC resource is being used in the Interfaces attribute of the NetBios resource.

Figure 4-6 Sample service group that includes a NetBIOS resource

Agent functions for NetBios agent

Online	Updates the Samba configuration with the NetBIOS name, all NetBIOS aliases and network interfaces, WINS support, and domain master options specified in the NetBIOS resource. Starts the nmbd daemon.
Offline	Removes the NetBIOS name, all NetBIOS aliases and network interfaces, WINS support, and domain master options specified in the NetBIOS resource from the Samba configuration file. Stops the nmbd daemon.
Monitor	Verifies that the Samba configuration contains the NetBIOS name, all NetBIOS aliases and network interfaces, WINS support, and domain master options specified in the NetBIOS resource. Also verifies that the nmbd daemon is running by reading its pid file.
Clean	Removes the NetBIOS name, all NetBIOS aliases and network interfaces, WINS support, and domain master options specified in the NetBIOS resource from the Samba configuration file. Stops the nmbd daemon, forcibly when necessary.

State definitions for NetBios agent

ONLINE	Indicates that the specified NetBIOS name and aliases are advertised and that Samba is handling requests for all specified network interfaces. Indicates that WINS and Domain support services are running, if configured.
--------	--

OFFLINE	Indicates one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ NetBIOS name is not advertised.■ A NetBIOS alias is not advertised.■ Samba is not handling requests on any of the specified interfaces.■ If WINS support is configured, Samba is not providing WINS service.■ If domain support is set, Samba is not providing Domain Master service.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent could not determine the state of the resource.
FAULTED	Indicates that the resource has become offline unexpectedly outside of VCS control.

Attributes for NetBios agent

Table 4-9 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
NetBiosName	Name by which the Samba server is known in the network. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "samba_demon" Note: Samba has a limitation of 15 characters for NetBios names and aliases.
SambaServerRes	Name of the SambaServer resource. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "smb_res1"

Table 4-10 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
Interfaces	<p>List of network interfaces on which Samba handles browsing.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: "172.29.9.24/16"</p> <p>Note: If you have configured the SocketAddress attribute value for the corresponding SambaServer resource, then you must also configure the same value paired with the appropriate netmask in the list of interfaces.</p>
NetBiosAliases	<p>List of additional names by which the Samba server is known in the network.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: { host1_samba, myname }</p> <p>Note: Samba has a limitation of 15 characters for NetBios names and aliases.</p>
WinsSupport	<p>If set to 1, this flag causes the agent to configure Samba as a WINS server.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
DomainMaster	<p>If set to 1, the agent sets Samba as Domain Master. Note that there can be only one domain master in a domain.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
PidFile	<p>The absolute path to the NetBIOS daemon pid file. This file contains the process ID of the monitored nmbd process.</p> <p>Configure this attribute if you are using a nonstandard configuration file name or path. If this attribute is not configured for non-standard configuration file names, the agent checks for the nmbd-<i>ConfFile</i>.pid file for resource monitoring.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "/usr/local/samba/var/locks/nmbd.pid"</p>

Resource type definition for NetBios agent

```
type NetBios (
  static str ArgList[] = { "SambaServerRes:ConfFile",
    "SambaServerRes:SambaTopDir", "SambaServerRes:LockDir",
    NetBiosName, NetBiosAliases, Interfaces, WinsSupport,
    DomainMaster, "SambaServerRes:PidFile", SambaServerRes,
    PidFile }
  str SambaServerRes
  str NetBiosName
  str NetBiosAliases[]
  str Interfaces[]
  int WinsSupport
  int DomainMaster
  str PidFile
)
```

Sample configuration for NetBios agent

```
NetBios Samba_NetBios (
  SambaServerRes = Samba_SambaServer
  NetBiosName = samba_demon
  NetBiosAliases = { asamba_demon, samba127 }
  WinsSupport = 1
  DomainMaster = 1
)
```

Debug log levels for NetBios agent

The NetBios agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_5

Service and application agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the services and applications agents](#)
- [Apache HTTP server agent](#)
- [Application agent](#)
- [CoordPoint agent](#)
- [Process agent](#)
- [ProcessOnOnly agent](#)
- [WPAR agent](#)
- [MemCPUAllocator agent](#)
- [LPAR agent](#)

About the services and applications agents

Use service and application agents to provide high availability for application and process-related resources.

Apache HTTP server agent

The Apache HTTP server agent brings an Apache Server online, takes it offline, and monitors its processes. The Apache HTTP server agent consists of resource

type declarations and agent scripts. You use the Apache HTTP server agent, in conjunction with other agents, to make an Apache HTTP server highly available.

This agent supports the Apache HTTP server 2.0 and 2.2. It also supports the IBM HTTP Server 1.3, 2.0 and 7.0.0.0.

This agent can detect when an Apache HTTP server is brought down gracefully by an administrator. When Apache is brought down gracefully, the agent does not trigger a resource fault even though Apache is down.

Note: The Apache agent requires an IP resource for operation.

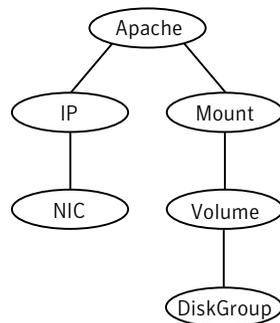
For more information regarding this agent:

See [“Apache HTTP server notes”](#) on page 175.

Dependencies

This type of resource depends on IP and Mount resources.

Figure 5-1 Sample service group for the Apache HTTP server agent



Agent functions

Online	<p>To start the Apache HTTP server, the agent:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Executes the httpdDir/httpd program with the appropriate arguments if the httpdDir program specifies the full path of the directory in which the httpd binary file is located.■ Alternatively, if the httpdDir attribute specifies the full path of the Apache HTTP server binary file, the binary file is executed with appropriate arguments. <p>When you specify a file with the EnvFile attribute, the file is sourced before the agent executes the Apache HTTP server commands.</p>
Offline	<p>To stop the Apache HTTP server, the agent:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Executes the httpdDir/httpd program with the appropriate arguments, if httpdDir specifies the full path of the directory in which the httpd binary file is located.■ Alternatively, if the httpdDir attribute is used to specify the full path of the Apache HTTP server binary, the binary file is executed with appropriate arguments.■ Sends a TERM signal to the HTTP Server parent process (Apache). <p>When you specify a file with the EnvFile attribute, the file is sourced before the agent executes the Apache HTTP server commands.</p>
Monitor	<p>Monitors the state of the Apache server. First it checks for the processes, next it can perform an optional state check.</p>
Clean	<p>Removes the Apache HTTP server system resources that might remain after a server fault or after an unsuccessful attempt to online or offline. These resources include the parent httpd daemon and its child daemons.</p>
Action	<p>checkconffile.vfd</p> <p>Checks for the existence of the Apache configuration file and the existence of the directory that contains the httpd binary that is used during start up.</p> <p>For a local installation, if the config file or HttpdDir is not found, make sure that it exists on the failover node.</p>

State definitions

ONLINE	Indicates that the Apache server is running.
--------	--

OFFLINE	Indicates that the Apache server is not running. Can also indicate that the administrator has stopped the HTTP server gracefully. Note that the agent uses the PidFile attribute for intentional offline detection.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that a problem exists with the configuration.

Attributes

Table 5-1 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
ConfigFile	Full path and file name of the main configuration file for the Apache server. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/apache/server1/conf/httpd.conf"
httpdDir	Full path of the Apache HTTP server binary file or full path of the directory in which the httpd binary file is located. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/apache/server1/bin"
PidFile	This attribute is required when you want to enable the detection of a graceful shutdown outside of VCS control. See Table 5-2 on page 170.
EnvFile	This attribute may be required when you use IBM HTTP Server. See Table 5-2 on page 170.

Table 5-2 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
DirectiveAfter	A list of directives that httpd processes after reading the configuration file. Type and dimension: string-association Example: DirectiveAfter{} = { KeepAlive=On }

Table 5-2 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
DirectiveBefore	<p>A list of directives that httpd processes before it reads the configuration file.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-association</p> <p>Example: DirectiveBefore{} = { User=nobody, Group=nobody }</p>
User	<p>Account name the agent uses to execute the httpd program. If you do not specify this value, the agent executes httpd as the root user.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "apache1"</p>
EnableSSL	<p>If this attribute is set to 1 (true) the online agent function will add support for SSL, by including the option <code>-DSSL</code> in the start command.</p> <p>For example: <code>/usr/sbin/httpd -f path_to_httpd.conf -k start -DSSL</code></p> <p>Where <code>path_to_httpd.conf</code> file is the path to the <code>httpd.conf</code> file.</p> <p>If this attribute is set to 0 (false) the agent excludes the SSL support.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: "1"</p>
HostName	<p>The virtual host name that is assigned to the Apache server instance. The host name is used in second-level monitoring for benchmarking the Apache HTTP server.</p> <p>You can use IPv4 or IPv6 addresses for the HostName attribute.</p> <p>Note: The HostName attribute is only required when the value of <code>SecondLevelMonitor</code> is 1 (true).</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "web1.example.com"</p>

Table 5-2 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
Port	<p>Port number where the Apache HTTP server instance listens. The port number is used in second-level monitoring for benchmarking the Apache HTTP server. Specify this attribute only if SecondLevelMonitor is set to 1 (true).</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 80</p> <p>Example: "80"</p>
EnvFile	<p>Full path and file name of the file that is sourced before executing Apache HTTP server commands. With Apache 2.0, the file <i>ServerRoot/bin/envvars</i>, which is supplied in most Apache 2.0 distributions, is commonly used to set the environment before executing httpd. Specifying this attribute is optional. If EnvFile is specified, the shell for user must be Bourne, Korn, or C shell.</p> <p>This attribute may be required when you use the IBM HTTP Server if the online action fails. For example: set the EnvFile to <i>/usr/IBM/HTTPServer/bin/envvars</i>.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "/apache/server1/bin/envvars"</p>
PidFile	<p>The PidFile attribute sets the file to which the server records the process ID of the daemon. The value of PidFile attribute must be the absolute path where the Apache instance records the pid.</p> <p>This attribute is required when you want the agent to detect the graceful shutdown of the Apache HTTP server. For the agent to detect the graceful shutdown of the Apache HTTP server, the value of the IntentionalOffline resource type attribute must be 1 (true).</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: <i>/var/run/httpd.pid</i></p>

Table 5-2 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
SharedObjDir	<p>Full path of the directory in which the Apache HTTP shared object files are located. Specifying this attribute is optional. It is used when the HTTP Server is compiled using the SHARED_CORE rule. If you specify this attribute, the directory is passed to the <code>-R</code> option when executing the <code>httpd</code> program. Refer to the <code>httpd</code> man pages for more information about the <code>-R</code> option.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Example: <code>"/apache/server1/libexec"</code></p>
SecondLevelMonitor	<p>Enables second-level monitoring for the resource. Second-level monitoring is a deeper, more thorough state check of the Apache HTTP server. Valid attribute values are 1 (true) and 0 (false).</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: <code>"1"</code></p>
SecondLevelTimeout	<p>The number of seconds that the monitor agent function waits on the execution of second-level monitor. If the second-level monitor program does not return to calling the monitor agent function before the <code>SecondLevelTimeout</code> window expires, the monitor agent function no longer blocks on the program sub-process. It does, however, report that the resource is offline. The value should be high enough to allow the second level monitor enough time to complete. The value should be less than the value of the agent's <code>MonitorTimeout</code>.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 30 Table</p>

Table 5-2 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
ResLogLevel	<p>Controls the agent's logging detail for a specific instance of a resource. Values are</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ERROR: Logs error messages. ■ WARN: Logs error and warning messages ■ INFO: Logs error, warning, and informational messages. ■ TRACE: Logs error, warning, informational, and trace messages. Trace logging is verbose. Use for initial configuration or troubleshooting. <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: INFO</p> <p>Example: "TRACE"</p>

Table 5-3 Resource type attribute

Optional attribute	Description
IntentionalOffline	For information on how to use the IntentionalOffline resource type attribute, refer to the <i>Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i> .

Resource type definition

```

type Apache (
    static keylist SupportedActions = { "checkconf.vfd" }
    static str ArgList[] = { ResLogLevel, State, IState, httpdDir,
        SharedObjDir, EnvFile, PidFile, HostName, Port, User,
        SecondLevelMonitor, SecondLevelTimeout, ConfigFile, EnableSSL,
        DirectiveAfter, DirectiveBefore }
    str ResLogLevel = INFO
    str httpdDir
    str SharedObjDir
    str EnvFile
    str PidFile
    str HostName
    int Port = 80
    str User
    int SecondLevelTimeout = 30
    str ConfigFile = 0

```

```
    str DirectiveAfter{}
    str DirectiveBefore{}
    boolean EnableSSL

    static boolean IntentionalOffline = 0
)
```

Apache HTTP server notes

The Apache Apache HTTP server has the following notes:

- See [“Tasks to perform before you use the Apache HTTP server agent”](#) on page 175.
- See [“About detecting application failure”](#) on page 176.
- See [“About bringing an Apache HTTP server online outside of VCS control”](#) on page 176.
- See [“About high Availability fire drill”](#) on page 177.

Tasks to perform before you use the Apache HTTP server agent

Before you use this agent, perform the following tasks:

- Install the Apache server on shared or local disks.
- Ensure that you are able to start the Apache HTTP server outside of VCS control, with the specified parameters in the Apache configuration file (for example: `/etc/apache/httpd.conf`). For more information on how to start the server: See [“About bringing an Apache HTTP server online outside of VCS control”](#) on page 176.
- Specify the location of the error log file in the Apache configuration file for your convenience (for example: `ErrorLog /var/apache/logs/error_log`).
- Verify that the floating IP has the same subnet as the cluster systems.
- If you use a port other than the default 80, assign an exclusive port for the Apache server.
- Verify that the Apache server configuration files are identical on all cluster systems.
- Verify that the Apache server does not autostart on system startup.
- Verify that `inetd` does not invoke the Apache server.
- The service group has disk and network resources to support the Apache server resource.
- Assign virtual host name and port to Apache Server.

About detecting application failure

The agent provides two methods to evaluate the state of an Apache HTTP server instance. The first state check is mandatory and the second is optional.

The first check determines the state of the Apache HTTP server. The check determines the state by searching for the existence of the parent httpd daemon. It also searches for at least one child httpd daemon. If the parent process and at least one child do not exist, VCS reports the resource as offline. If they do exist, and if the agent attribute `SecondLevelMonitor` is set to true, then the Apache agent uses the Apache Benchmarking utility "ab" to perform detail monitoring. If the exit code of the "ab" utility is 0 and if the command output contains "Benchmarking HostName", the agent considers the server online, else the agent considers the server offline.

If the binary file `ab` is not found, Apache agent uses the `ab2` binary file for detail monitoring.

About bringing an Apache HTTP server online outside of VCS control

When you bring an Apache HTTP server online outside of VCS control, first source its environment file. Start the server with the `-f` option so the server knows which instance to start. You can then specify additional options (such as `EnableSSL` or `SharedObjDir`) that you want the server to use at start.

To start an Apache HTTP server outside of VCS control

- 1 Source the environment file if required.
- 2 Start the Apache HTTP server. You must use the `-f` option so that the agent can distinguish different instances of the server.

```
httpdDir/httpd -f ConfigFile -k start
```

Where `httpdDir` is `/apache/v2.2/bin` `ConfigFile` is `/apache/v2.2/conf/httpd.conf`.
When fully formed, the start example looks like:

```
/apache/v2.2/bin/httpd -f /apache/v2.2/conf/httpd.conf -k start
```

- 3 Specify additional options such as `EnableSSL` or `SharedObjDir` that you want to use when you start server. When you add `EnableSSL` to the command, it resembles:

```
httpdDir/httpd -f ConfigFile -k start -DSSL
```

Note: You can specify the full path of a binary file without having `httpd` as part of `httpdDir` attribute.

For example:

```
/usr/sbin/apache2 -f /etc/httpd/conf/httpd.conf -k start
```

About high Availability fire drill

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node. These discrepancies might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node.

For Apache resources, when the Apache HTTP server is installed locally, the high availability fire drill checks for the validity of these attributes:

- `ConfigFile`
- `httpdDir`

For more information about using the high availability fire drill see the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Sample configurations

```
group ApacheG1 (  
    SystemList = { host1 = 0, host2 = 1 }  
)
```

```
)

Apache httpd_server (
    httpdDir = "/apache/bin"
    HostName = vcsaix1
    Port = 8888
    User = root
    SecondLevelMonitor = 1
    ConfigFile = "/apache/conf/httpd.conf"
)

DiskGroup Apache_dg (
    DiskGroup = apc1
)

IP Apache_ip (
    Device = en0
    Address = "11.123.99.168"
    NetMask = "255.255.254.0"
)

Mount Apache_mnt (
    MountPoint = "/apache"
    BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/apc1/apcvol1"
    FSType = vxfs
    FsckOpt = "-y"
)

Apache_mnt requires Apache_dg
httpd_server requires Apache_mnt
httpd_server requires Apache_ip
```

Basic IPv6 configuration

The following is a basic IPv6 configuration for the resource.

```
group ipv6group (
    SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
)

Apache ipv6group_apache_res (
    HostName = "fd4b:454e:205a:110:211:25ff:fe7e:118"
    PidFile = "/myapache/apache/logs/httpd.pid"
    httpdDir = "/myapache/apache/bin"
```

```
    ConfigFile = "/myapache/apache/conf/httpd.conf"
    ResLogLevel = TRACE
    SecondLevelTimeout = 20
    IntentionalOffline = 1
)

DiskGroup ipv6group_dg_res (
    DiskGroup = dg01
)

IP ipv6group_ip_res (
    Device = en0

    Address = "fd4b:454e:205a:110:211:25ff:fe7e:118"
    PrefixLen = 64
)

Mount ipv6group_mnt_res (
    MountOpt = rw
    FsckOpt = "-n"
    BlockDevice = "/dev/vx/dsk/dg01/vol01"
    MountPoint = "/myapache/apache"
    FSType = vxfs
)

NIC ipv6group_nic_res (
    Device = en0
)

Volume ipv6group_vol_res (
    Volume = vol01
    DiskGroup = dg01
)

ipv6group_apache_res requires ipv6group_mnt_res
ipv6group_apache_res requires ipv6group_ip_res
ipv6group_mnt_res requires ipv6group_vol_res
ipv6group_vol_res requires ipv6group_dg_res
ipv6group_ip_res requires ipv6group_nic_res
```

Application agent

The Application agent brings applications online, takes them offline, and monitors their status. Use it to specify different executables for the online, offline, and monitor routines for different programs. The executables can be on local storage or shared storage. You can use this agent to provide high availability for applications that do not have bundled, enterprise, or custom agents.

An application runs in the default context of root. Specify the user name to run an application in a user context.

You can monitor the application in the following ways:

- Use the monitor program
- Specify a list of processes
- Specify a list of process ID files
- Any combination of the above

This agent is WPAR-aware. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute for this type has a default value of 1 for RunInContainer and a default value of 0 for PassCInfo. Symantec recommends that you do not change these values. For more information about ContainerOpts attribute, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

This agent is IMF-aware and uses asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver for IMF notification. For more information about the Intelligent Monitoring Framework (IMF) and intelligent resource monitoring, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Prevention Of Concurrency Violation (ProPCV) can be enabled to prevent an online resource on a node from coming online on another node, outside of VCS control, in the same cluster. In that, ProPCV prevents the execution of StartProgram and processes that are configured in MonitorProcesses on the offline node. This action prevents data corruption of resources and detects concurrency violation at an early stage. The attribute can only be set for a local failover type group. To enable this feature you need to set the ProPCV attribute value to 1. For more information about ProPCV, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

High availability fire drill for Application agent

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node. These discrepancies might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node. For Application resources, the high availability fire drill checks for:

- The availability of the specified program and execution permissions for the specified program (program.vfd)
- The existence of the specified user on the host (user.vfd)
- The existence of the same binary on all nodes (cksum.vfd)

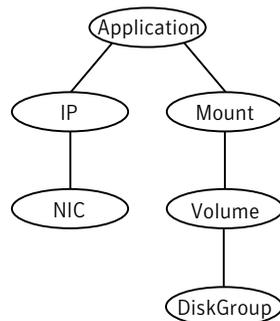
For more information, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Dependencies for Application agent

No fixed dependency exists for Application agent.

Depending on how you plan to use it, an Application type of resource can depend on IP and Mount resources. Alternatively, instead of the IP resource you can also use the IPMultiNIC or IPMultiNICB resource.

Figure 5-2 Sample service group that includes an Application resource



Agent functions for Application agent

Online

Runs the command or script that you specify in the value of the StartProgram attribute. Runs the command with the specified parameters in the context of the specified user.

To bring the resource online, the agent function performs the command:

```
su [-] user -c command_to_online_resource
```

Offline	<p>Runs the command or script that you specify in the value of the StopProgram attribute. Runs the command with the specified parameters in the context of the specified user.</p> <p>To take the resource offline, the agent function performs the command:</p> <pre>su [-] user -c <i>command_to_offline_resource</i></pre>
Monitor	<p>If you specify the MonitorProgram attribute, the agent executes the user defined MonitorProgram in the user-specified context. If you specify the PidFiles attribute, the routine verifies that the process ID that is found in each listed file is running. If you specify the MonitorProcesses attribute, the routine verifies that each listed process is running in the context of the user you specify.</p> <p>Use any combination among these attributes (MonitorProgram, PidFiles, or MonitorProcesses) to monitor the application.</p> <p>If any of the processes that are specified in either PidFiles or MonitorProcesses is determined not to be running, the monitor returns OFFLINE. If the process terminates ungracefully, the monitor returns OFFLINE and failover occurs.</p> <p>To monitor the resource, the agent function performs the command:</p> <pre>su [-] user -c <i>command_to_monitor_resource</i></pre>
imf_init	<p>Initializes the agent to interface with the asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver. This function runs when the agent starts up.</p>
imf_getnotification	<p>Gets notification about resource state changes. This function runs after the agent initializes with the AMF kernel driver. The agent continuously waits for notification and takes action on the resource upon notification.</p>
imf_register	<p>Registers the resource entities, which the agent must monitor, with the AMF kernel driver. For example, the function registers the PID for online monitoring of a process. This function runs for each resource after the resource goes into steady state (online or offline). The Application agent uses IMF for the processes configured with PidFiles and the MonitorProcesses attribute.</p>

Clean Terminates processes specified in `PidFiles` or `MonitorProcesses`. Ensures that only those processes (that are specified in the `MonitorProcesses` attribute) running with the user ID specified in the `User` attribute are killed. If the `CleanProgram` is defined, the agent executes the `CleanProgram`.

To forcefully stop the resource, the agent function performs the command:

```
su [-] user -c command_to_clean_resource
```

Note that the agent uses the `su -` option only when the attribute `UseSUDash` is enabled (1). The `UseSUDash` attribute is disabled (0) by default.

Action The various functions of the action entry point are as follows:

- `program.vfd`
Checks the availability of the specified program and the execution permissions for the specified program.
- `user.vfd`
Checks the existence of the specified user on the host.
- `cksum.vfd`
Checks the existence of the same binary on all nodes.
- `propcv`
[For internal use only] Invokes the AMF call with arguments to decide whether to allow or prevent processes from starting for an application resource, outside the VCS control, in the cluster. The `StartProgram` and the processes configured under `MonitorProcesses`, registered with AMF for offline monitoring, are prevented from starting on the offline node. This helps prevent concurrency violation at an early stage.
- `getcksum`
Returns the checksum of the specified program

For all agent functions on AIX: If the `User` attribute is set to a non-root user, the agent checks if this non-root user has any home directory that exists and is accessible. If this non-root user has a home directory and is accessible, then it does the command: `su - user -c command`. If this non-root user does not have a home directory or the home directory is unaccessible, then it uses the command: `su user -c command`.

State definitions for Application agent

ONLINE	Indicates that all processes that are specified in the PidFiles and the MonitorProcesses attribute are running and that the MonitorProgram returns ONLINE.
OFFLINE	Indicates that at least one process that is specified in the PidFiles attribute or MonitorProcesses is not running, or that the MonitorProgram returns OFFLINE.
UNKNOWN	Indicates an indeterminable application state or invalid configuration.
FAULTED	Indicates that the process has terminated unexpectedly or MonitorProgram returns "offline" unexpectedly.

Attributes for Application agent

Table 5-4 Required attributes for AIX

Required attribute	Description
StartProgram	<p>The executable, which starts the application. Specify the complete path of the executable. Applicable command line arguments follow the name of the executable and have spaces separating them. This executable can be on local storage or shared storage.</p> <p>Note: Do not use the opening and closing ({}) brace symbols in this string.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/usr/sbin/sample_app start"</p>
StopProgram	<p>The executable, which stops the application. Specify the complete path of the executable. Applicable command line arguments follow the name of the executable and have spaces separating them. This executable can be on local storage or shared storage.</p> <p>Note: Do not use the opening and closing ({}) brace symbols in this string.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/usr/sbin/sample_app stop"</p>

Table 5-4 Required attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
At least one of the following attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ MonitorProcesses ■ MonitorProgram ■ PidFiles 	See Table 5-5 on page 185.

Table 5-5 Optional attributes for AIX

Optional attribute	Description
CleanProgram	<p>The executable, which forcibly stops the application. Specify the complete path of the executable. Applicable command line arguments follow the name of the executable and have spaces separating them. This executable can be on local storage or shared storage.</p> <p>Note: Symantec recommends to have the CleanProgram on the local storage so that in case of loss of storage connectivity VCS can take appropriate action to stop the application.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: <code>"/usr/sbin/sample_app stop"</code></p>
MonitorProcesses	<p>A list of processes that you want monitored and cleaned. Each process name is the name of an executable. Qualify the executable name with its complete path if the path starts the executable.</p> <p>The process name must be the full command line argument that the <code>ps -u user -eo pid,comm</code> command displays for the process.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: <code>{ "/usr/bin/sh /user/app/process1", "/usr/bin/sh /user/app/process2" }</code></p>

Table 5-5 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
MonitorProgram	<p>The executable, which monitors the application. Specify the complete path of the executable. Applicable command line arguments follow the name of the executable and have spaces separating them. This executable can be on local storage or shared storage.</p> <p>MonitorProgram can return the following states: OFFLINE value is 100 or 1; ONLINE values range from 101 to 110 or 0 (depending on the confidence level); 110 equals confidence level of 100%. Any other value = UNKNOWN.</p> <p>If MonitorProgram is configured and not available, then resource state will be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ OFFLINE if the resource was in OFFLINE state and not waiting for any action. ■ UNKNOWN if the resource was in any other state or waiting for some action. <p>Note: Do not use the opening and closing ({}) brace symbols in this string.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "/usr/sbin/sample_app_monitor all"</p>
PidFiles	<p>A list of PID (process ID) files that contain the PID of the processes that you want monitored and cleaned. These are application generated files. Each PID file contains one monitored PID. Specify the complete path of each PID file in the list.</p> <p>The process ID can change when the process restarts. If the application takes time to update the PID file, the agent's Monitor function may return an incorrect result. If incorrect results occur, increase the ToleranceLimit in the resource definition.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: "/etc/sample/sample_app.pid"</p>

Table 5-5 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
User	<p>The user ID for running StartProgram, StopProgram, MonitorProgram, and CleanProgram. The processes that are specified in the MonitorProcesses list must run in the context of the specified user. Monitor checks the processes to make sure they run in this context.</p> <p>Note: If configured user does not exist then the resource state will be UNKNOWN.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: root</p> <p>Example: user1</p>
EnvFile	<p>The environment file that should get sourced before running any of the StartProgram, StopProgram, MonitorProgram or CleanProgram.</p> <p>Note: Please make sure that the EnvFile adheres the default shell syntax of the configured user</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: ""</p> <p>Example: /home/username/envfile</p>
UseSUDash	<p>When the value of this attribute is 0, the agent performs an <code>su user</code> command before it executes the StartProgram, the StopProgram, the MonitorProgram, or the CleanProgram agent functions.</p> <p>When the value of this attribute is 1, the agent performs an <code>su - user</code> command before it executes the StartProgram, the StopProgram, the MonitorProgram or the CleanProgram agent functions.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 1</p>

Resource type definition for Application agent

```

type Application (
    static keylist SupportedActions = { "program.vfd",
    "user.vfd", "cksum.vfd", getcksum, procv }
    static str ArgList[] = { User, StartProgram, StopProgram,

```

```

CleanProgram, MonitorProgram, PidFiles, MonitorProcesses,
EnvFile, UseSUDash, State, IState }
static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=1, PassCInfo=0 }
static str IMFRegList[] = { MonitorProcesses, User, PidFiles,
MonitorProgram }
str User = "root"
str StartProgram
str StopProgram
str CleanProgram
str MonitorProgram
str PidFiles[]
str MonitorProcesses[]
str EnvFile
boolean UseSUDash = 0
)

```

Notes for Application agent

Using Application agent with IMF

Intelligent monitoring is supported for the Application agent only under specific configurations. The complete list of such configurations is provided in the following table:

Table 5-6

MonitorProgram	MonitorProcesses	PidFiles	IMF Monitoring Mode
Not Configured	Not Configured	Not Configured	Not Applicable
Not Configured	Not Configured	Configured	Online, Offline
Not Configured	Configured	Not Configured	Online, Offline
Not Configured	Configured	Configured	Online, Offline
Configured	Not Configured	Not Configured	Offline Only
Configured	Not Configured	Configured	Offline Only
Configured	Configured	Not Configured	Offline Only
Configured	Configured	Configured	Offline Only

Note: When you do not configure MonitorProcesses, IMF monitors only the StartProgram on the offline node. Hence, the MonitorFreq of IMF attribute must be set to 1 so that IMF monitors the resource on the offline node every monitor cycle.

Note: For a resource, if a PID file configured in the PidFiles attribute and a process configured in the MonitorProcesses attribute have the same process ID (PID), then the resource fails to register to IMF.

When multiple processes are configured under the MonitorProcesses attribute and only some of them are running, offline registration with IMF fails repeatedly until RegisterRetryLimit is reached. In such a scenario, IMF cannot determine when the resource goes ONLINE and the agent monitors the resource in the traditional way.

For a process that is registered with AMF for offline monitoring, AMF may not detect the process being executed if the length of the process and related arguments exceeds 80 characters.

Using Application agent with ProPCV

ProPCV functionality prevents the StartProgram and binary-based processes that are configured under MonitorProcesses from executing on the offline node. This action detects concurrency violation at an early stage in the cycle. However, ProPCV does not prevent script-based processes that are configured under MonitorProcesses from executing on the offline node. Considerations for ProPCV to function:

- You must run the StartProgram with the same order of arguments as configured in the StartProgram attribute. If you change the order of arguments, ProPCV does not prevent the execution of StartProgram. This causes delay in detecting concurrency violation.

For example, a single command can be run in multiple ways:

```
/usr/bin/tar -c -f a.tar
```

```
/usr/bin/tar -f a.tar -c
```

So, ProPCV does not function if you run the command in a way that is not configured in the StartProgram attribute.

- You must start the StartProgram by using the commands or the way specified in StartProgram attribute. But if you use another way or command to start the program that is not specified in the attribute, ProPCV does not prevent the startup of the program. This causes delay in detecting concurrency violation.
- The combined length of the process along with its arguments and the interpreter path (if the process is a script) does not exceed 80 characters.

- If StartProgram is a script, the script must have the interpreter path as the first line and start with #!.
For example, a shell script should start with "#!/usr/bin/sh".
- If the StartProgram is a script, do not change the interpreter path in the script file after the StartProgram is registered for offline monitoring. Else, ProPCV may not function for the StartProgram.
- You must not append the StartProgram attribute with the special character &. For example, '/app/start.sh &'.

Requirement for programs

The programs specified in StartProgram, StopProgram, MonitorProgram, CleanProgram should not continuously write to STDOUT or STDERR. If required, please redirect STDOUT and STDERR to some file.

Requirement for default profile

The default profile of configured user should not have any blocking command such as `bash` or any other command such as `exec` that changes the behavior of the shell. This may lead to unexpected behavior.

Sample configurations for Application agent

The sample configurations for this agent follow:

Configuration 1 for Application agent

In this example, you configure the executable `sample_app` as StartProgram and StopProgram, with start and stop specified as command line arguments respectively. Configure the agent to monitor two processes: a process that the `app.pid` specifies and the process `sample_app`.

```
Application samba_app (  
  User = "root"  
  StartProgram = "/usr/sbin/sample_app start"  
  StopProgram = "/usr/sbin/sample_app stop"  
  PidFiles = { "/var/lock/sample_app/app.pid" }  
  MonitorProcesses = { "sample_app" }  
)
```

Configuration 2 for Application agent

In this example, since no user is specified, it uses the root user. The executable `sample_app` starts and stops the application using `start` and `stop` as the command line arguments. The executable `sample_app_monitor` monitors the application and uses `all` as its command line argument. The agent also monitors the `sample_app1` and `sample_app2` processes.

```
Application samba_app2 (  
  StartProgram = "/usr/sbin/sample_app start"  
  StopProgram = "/usr/sbin/sample_app stop"  
  CleanProgram = "/usr/sbin/sample_app force stop"  
  MonitorProgram = "/usr/local/bin/sample_app_monitor all"  
  MonitorProcesses = { "sample_app1", "sample_app2" }  
)
```

Debug log levels for Application agent

The Application agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

CoordPoint agent

Use the Coordination Point (CoordPoint) agent to monitor the registrations on the different coordination points on each node.

In addition, the CoordPoint agent monitors changes to the Coordinator Disk Group constitution, such as when a disk is accidentally deleted from the Coordinator Disk Group or if the VxVM private region of a disk is corrupted.

The agent performs detailed monitoring on the CoordPoint resource. You can tune the frequency of the detailed monitoring with the `LevelTwoMonitorFreq` attribute. For example, if you set this attribute to 5, the agent monitors the Coordinator Disk Group constitution in every fifth monitor cycle.

The CoordPoint agent is a monitor-only agent that runs on each node within the client cluster. It can monitor Coordination Point (CP) servers and SCSI-3 disks.

Coordination Point server as a coordination point

When you have configured a CP server as a coordination point, the CoordPoint agent performs the following tasks:

- Confirms that the CP server coordination point can communicate with the client cluster.

- Validates the node registrations in the CP server database using the `cpsadm` command.

SCSI-3 based disk as a coordination point

In case the coordination point is a SCSI-3 based disk, the CoordPoint agent uses the `vxfsenadm` command to confirm that the registered keys on the disk are intact. The Monitor agent function contains the monitoring functionality for SCSI-3 disks and CP servers.

If the agent detects an anomaly, the agent reports it to you so you can repair the coordination point. You may have to perform an online coordinator point replacement procedure if the problem is isolated to the keys registered.

Note: The CoordPoint agent that runs on a given client cluster node monitors the keys for coordination points visible to that node alone.

For important information about this agent, refer to:

See [“Notes for the CoordPoint agent”](#) on page 194.

Dependencies

No dependencies exist for the CoordPoint resource.

Agent functions

Monitor	<p>Enables the CoordPoint agent to validate the node registrations in the coordination points and confirms that the coordination points are accessible. In addition, enables the agent to monitor disks in the Coordinator Disk Group. Specifically, if a disk is deleted from the disk group or the VxVM private region of a disk is corrupted.</p> <p>CoordPoint resources are persistent, which means that they cannot be brought online or taken offline. They can only monitor the coordination point registrations. For this reason, the service group that contains the CoordPoint resource appears to be offline after a command such as <code>hastatus -sum</code>.</p> <p>The CoordPoint agent also performs I/O fencing reporting activities.</p> <p>See “CoordPoint agent I/O fencing reporting activities” on page 195.</p>
---------	--

State definitions

ONLINE	Indicates that the CoordPoint resource is working.
UNKNOWN	Indicates the agent cannot determine the coordination points resource's state. This state may be due to an incorrect configuration.
FAULTED	<p>Indicates that CoordPoint resource is reported for one or more of the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ The number of coordination points with missing keys (or registrations) has exceeded the value of the FaultTolerance attribute.■ The number of unreachable coordination points.■ Coordinator disks are deleted from the Coordinator Disk Group.■ Public character path of a disk and the device path that corresponds to the device number of that disk in the kernel driver do not match.

Attributes

Table 5-7 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
FaultTolerance	<p>The FaultTolerance attribute determines when the CoordPoint agent declares that the registrations on the coordination points are missing or connectivity between the nodes and the coordination points is lost.</p> <p>If the number of coordination points with missing keys (or registrations) and or the number of unreachable coordination points exceeds the value of the FaultTolerance attribute, then the agent reports FAULTED.</p> <p>Set the value of this attribute depending on your own configuration requirements. For example, if the FaultTolerance value is set to 1, then the CoordPoint agent reports FAULTED if it sees 2 or more number of coordinator points with missing keys (or registrations) and or the number of unreachable coordination points.</p> <p>Change the value of the FaultTolerance attribute either before the CoordPoint agent starts to monitor or while the CoordPoint agent is monitoring. If the attribute is set while the CoordPoint agent is monitoring, then the CoordPoint agent reads the new value in the next monitor cycle.</p> <p>To view the current FaultTolerance value, enter the following command:</p> <pre># hares -display coordpoint -attribute FaultTolerance</pre> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: "0"</p>

Resource type definition

```
type CoordPoint (
    static str ArgList[] = { FaultTolerance }
    static int InfoInterval = 300
    static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60
    static str Operations = None
    int FaultTolerance
)
```

Notes for the CoordPoint agent

The notes are as follows:

CoordPoint agent I/O fencing reporting activities

The CoordPoint agent also performs the following I/O fencing reporting activities:

- Checks to determine if I/O fencing is running.
If I/O fencing is not running, then the CoordPoint agent reports failure.
- Checks the mode of fencing operation. I/O fencing can operate in one of the following three modes:
 - SCSI-3 mode: If I/O fencing runs in SCSI-3 mode, then the CoordPoint agent continues to monitor.
 - Customized mode: If I/O fencing runs in Customized Fencing mode, then the CoordPoint agent continues to monitor.
 - Disabled mode: If I/O fencing runs in disabled mode, no action is required. The CoordPoint agent returns success.

AutoStartList attribute

AutoStartList is a service group attribute that needs to be populated with a system list. The VCS engine brings up the specified service group on the nodes in the list.

AutoStartList is not a required attribute for the service group that contains the CoordPoint resource. The CoordPoint resource is a persistent resource and when a service group is configured with this type of resource, it cannot be brought online.

Specifying the AutoStartList with a system list does not change the behavior of the service group. The service group will be reflected in OFFLINE status itself, irrespective of the AutoStartList attribute.

Detailed monitoring for the Coordpoint resource

The agent fetches disk names and unique identifiers from the kernel driver for I/O fencing. It runs a series of commands on the disks for information such as disk access name. It checks for disks that are no longer part of the Coordinator Disk Group. It also compares the public character path of the disks with the device path stored in the kernel driver. The agent faults the resource when any of the checks fail.

Sample configuration

In this example, the coordination point agent type resource is configured with the value of the FaultTolerance attribute set to 0. At this value setting, the CoordPoint agent reports FAULTED, when the agent determines that at least one coordination point has keys (or registrations) missing and or one coordination point is not reachable.

The following is an example service group (vxfen) extracted from a main.cf file:

```
group vxfen (
  SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
  AutoFailOver = 0
  Parallel = 1
  AutoStartList = { sysA, sysB }
)
  CoordPoint coordpoint (
    FaultTolerance=0
    LevelTwoMonitorFreq = 5
  )
  // resource dependency tree
  //
  //   group vxfen
  //   {
  //   CoordPoint coordpoint
  //   }
```

Debug log levels

The CoordPoint agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_10

Process agent

The Process agent starts, stops, and monitors a process that you specify. You can use the agent to make a process highly available.

This agent is Intelligent Monitoring Framework (IMF)-aware and uses asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver for IMF notification. Note that the AMF kernel driver also monitors the kernel processes if you have enabled intelligent monitoring for Process agent. For more information about IMF and intelligent resource monitoring, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

This agent is WPAR-aware. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute for this type has a default value of 1 for RunInContainer and a default value of 0 for PassCInfo. Symantec recommends that you do not change these values.

For more information on ContainerOpts attribute refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

High availability fire drill for Process agent

The high availability fire drill detects discrepancies between the VCS configuration and the underlying infrastructure on a node; discrepancies that might prevent a service group from going online on a specific node.

For Process resources, the high availability fire drill checks for:

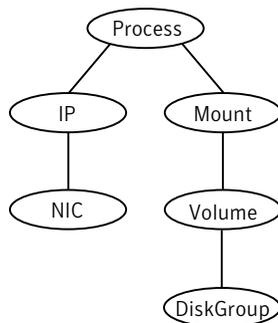
- The existence of a binary executable for the specified process (program.vfd)
- The existence of the same binary on all nodes (program.vfd)

For more information refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Dependencies for Process agent

Depending on the context, this type of resource can depend on IP, IPMultiNIC, IPMultiNICB, WPAR, and Mount resources.

Figure 5-3 Sample service group for a Process resource



Agent functions for Process agent

Online	Starts the process with optional arguments.
Offline	Terminates the process with a <code>SIGTERM</code> . If the process does not terminate, a <code>SIGKILL</code> is sent.
Monitor	Checks to see if the process is running by scanning the process table for the name of the executable pathname and argument list.
Clean	Terminates all ongoing resource actions and takes the resource offline, forcibly when necessary.

imf_init	Initializes the agent to interface with the asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver. This function runs when the agent starts up.
imf_getnotification	Gets notification about resource state changes. This function runs after the agent initializes with the AMF kernel driver. The agent continuously waits for notification and takes action on the resource upon notification.
imf_register	Registers the resource entities, which the agent must monitor, with the AMF kernel driver. For example, the function registers the PID for online monitoring of a process. This function runs for each resource after the resource goes into steady state (online or offline).

State definitions for Process agent

ONLINE	Indicates that the specified process is running. The agent only reports the process as online if the value configured for PathName attribute exactly matches the process listing from the ps output along with the arguments.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the specified process is not running.
FAULTED	Indicates that the process has terminated unexpectedly.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent can not determine the state of the process.

Attributes for Process agent

Table 5-8 Required attribute for AIX

Required attribute	Description
PathName	Absolute path to access an executable program. This path includes the program name. If a script controls the process, the PathName defines the complete path to the shell. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/usr/sbin/sendmail"

Table 5-9 Optional attributes for AIX

Optional attribute	Description
Arguments	<p>Passes arguments to the process. If a script controls the process, the script is passed as an argument. Separate multiple arguments with a single space. A string cannot accommodate more than one space between arguments, nor allow for leading or trailing whitespace characters.</p> <p>This attribute must not exceed 80 characters.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "bd q1h"</p>

Resource type definition for Process agent

```

type Process (
  static keylist SupportedActions = { "program.vfd", getcksum }
  static str ArgList[] = { PathName, Arguments }
  static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=1, PassCInfo=0 }
  str PathName
  str Arguments
)

```

Usage notes for Process agent

The Process agent has the following notes:

- [Requirement for programs](#)

Requirement for programs

The programs specified in PathName should not continuously write to STDOUT or STDERR. If required, please redirect STDOUT and STDERR to some file.

Sample configurations for Process agent

Configuration 1 for Process agent

Configuration 1 for AIX follows:

```

Process usr_lib_sendmail (
  PathName = "/usr/lib/sendmail"
)

```

```
Arguments = "bd qlh"
)
```

Configuration 2 for Process agent

Configuration 2 follows:

```
include "types.cf"
cluster ProcessCluster (
.
.
.
group ProcessGroup (
SystemList = { sysa = 0, sysb = 1 }
AutoStartList = { sysa }
)
Process Process1 (
PathName = "/usr/local/bin/myprog"
Arguments = "arg1 arg2"
)
Process Process2 (
PathName = "/bin/csh"
Arguments = "/tmp/funscript/myscript"
)
// resource dependency tree
//
// group ProcessGroup
// {
// Process Process1
// Process Process2
// }
```

Debug log levels for Process agent

The Process agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

ProcessOnOnly agent

The ProcessOnOnly agent starts and monitors a process that you specify. You can use the agent to make a process highly available or to monitor it. This resource's Operation value is OnOnly.

This agent is WPAR-aware. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute for this type has a default value of 1 for RunInContainer and a default value of 0 for PassCInfo. Symantec recommends that you do not change these values.

Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

VCS uses this agent internally to monitor security processes in a secure cluster.

Dependencies

No child dependencies exist for this resource.

Agent functions

Online	Starts the process with optional arguments.
Monitor	Checks to see if the process is alive by scanning the process table for the name of the executable pathname and argument list.
Clean	Terminates all ongoing resource actions and takes the resource offline, forcibly when necessary.

State definitions

ONLINE	Indicates that the specified process is running. The agent only reports the process as ONLINE if the value configured for PathName attribute exactly matches the process listing from the ps output along with the arguments.
FAULTED	Indicates that the process has unexpectedly terminated.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the agent can not determine the state of the process.

Attributes

Table 5-10 Required attributes for AIX

Required attribute	Description
PathName	<p>Defines complete pathname to access an executable program. This path includes the program name. If a process is controlled by a script, the PathName defines the complete path to the shell.</p> <p>The value configured for this attribute needs to match the process listing from the ps output for the agent to display as ONLINE.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>

Table 5-11 Optional attributes for AIX

Optional attribute	Description
Arguments	<p>Passes arguments to the process. If a process is controlled by a script, the script is passed as an argument. Multiple arguments must be separated by a single space. A string cannot accommodate more than one space between arguments, nor allow for leading or trailing whitespace characters.</p> <p>Arguments must not exceed 80 characters (total).</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>
IgnoreArgs	<p>A flag that indicates whether monitor ignores the argument list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If the value is 0, it checks the process pathname and argument list. ■ If the value is 1, it only checks for the executable pathname and ignores the rest of the argument list. <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>

Resource type definition

```

type ProcessOnOnly (
  static str ArgList[] = { IgnoreArgs, PathName, Arguments }
  static str Operations = OnOnly
  static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=1, PassCInfo=0 }
  int IgnoreArgs
  str PathName

```

```
str Arguments
)
```

ProcessOnOnly agent usage notes

The ProcessOnOnly agent has the following notes:

- [Requirement for programs](#)

Requirement for programs

The programs specified in PathName should not continuously write to STDOUT or STDERR. If required, please redirect STDOUT and STDERR to some other file.

Sample configurations

```
group VxSS (
SystemList = { north = 0, south = 1 }
Parallel = 1
AutoStartList = { north, south }
OnlineRetryLimit = 3
OnlineRetryInterval = 120
)
Phantom phantom_vxss (
)
ProcessOnOnly vxatd (
IgnoreArgs = 1
PathName = "/opt/VRTSat/bin/vxatd"
)
```

Debug log levels

The ProcessOnOnly agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

WPAR agent

The WPAR agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors workload partitions. You can use the agent to make WPARs highly available and to monitor them.

This agent is WPAR-aware. The ContainerOpts resource type attribute for this type has a default value of 0 for RunInContainer and a default value of 1 for PassCInfo. Symantec recommends that you do not change the values for these keys.

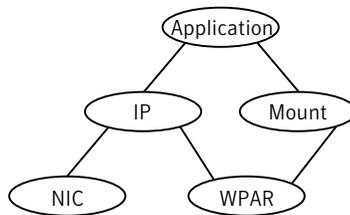
For more information on ContainerOpts attribute, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information.

This agent is IMF-aware and uses asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver for IMF notification. For more information about the Intelligent Monitoring Framework (IMF) and intelligent resource monitoring, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Dependencies

No dependencies exist for the WPAR resource.

Figure 5-4 Sample service group that includes a WPAR resource



Agent functions

The value of the Operations attribute for this agent is OnOff.

Online	Brings a WPAR up and running.
Offline	Takes a WPAR down gracefully.
Monitor	Checks if the specified WPAR is up and running. If IMF is enabled for the WPAR agent, the resource is monitored asynchronously and any change in the resource state is immediately sent to VCS for appropriate action.
Clean	Brings down a WPAR forcefully.
imf_init	Initializes the agent to interface with the asynchronous monitoring framework (AMF) kernel driver. This function runs when the agent starts up.
imf_getnotification	Waits for notification about resource state changes. This function runs after the agent initializes with the AMF kernel driver. The agent continuously waits for notification and takes action on the resource upon notification.

imf_register Registers the resource entities, which the agent must monitor, with the AMF kernel driver. This function runs for each resource after the resource goes into steady state (online or offline).

Attributes

Table 5-12 summarizes the optional attributes for the WPAR agent.

Table 5-12 Optional attributes for AIX

Optional attribute	Description
ShutdownGracePeriod	<p>Allows the root user to set the number of seconds before the shut down of a WPAR.</p> <p>Symantec recommends to check the time required for WPAR to stop outside VCS control and configure this attribute accordingly.</p> <p>Note: Offline fails if the value of this attribute is 0 as the WPAR takes some time to shut down fully.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 90</p> <p>Example: "120"</p>
ResourceSet	<p>A resource set is used to define a subset of processors in the system. If a resource set is specified for a workload partition, it can use the processors within the specified resource set only. The value of the ResourceSet attribute is the name of the resource set created using the mkrset command. If set, the agent configures the WPAR to use only the resource set specified by this attribute.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: ""</p> <p>Example: ResourceSet = "myrset"</p>
WorkLoad	<p>Allows modification of resource control attributes shares_CPU and shares_memory. The key CPU is used to specify the number of processor shares that are available to the workload partition. The key MEM is used to specify the number of memory shares that are available to the workload partition.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-association</p> <p>Default: { }</p> <p>Example: { CPU = 50, MEM = 30 }</p>

Table 5-12 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
DROpts	<p>The value of this attribute consists of the following keys that define the disaster recovery (DR) options for the WPAR.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ DNSDomain The domain name to use within the WPAR at this site ■ DNSSearchPath The domain search path used by this WPAR at this site. The value of this key must contain a list of DNS domain names that are used for the DNS lookup of a hostname in case the domain name of the hostname is not specified. Use spaces to separate the domain names. ■ DNSServers The list of DNS servers used by this WPAR at this site. The value of this key must contain a list of IP addresses of DNS servers that are used for the DNS lookup of a hostname. Use spaces to separate the IP addresses. <p>In a DR configuration, if one or more of these keys are set, the resource is considered to be DR-enabled. If all the keys stay at their default value (""), then the resource is not DR-enabled even if it is in a disaster recovery configuration.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-association</p> <p>Example: DROpts = {DNSSearchPath = "vx1.veritas.com veritas.com", DNSServers = "10.216.16.101", Gateway = "10.209.72.1", DNSDomain = "vx1.veritas.com" }</p>

Resource type definition

The resource type definition for this agent follows:

```

type WPAR (
static str ArgList[] = { ShutdownGracePeriod, ResourceSet,
WorkLoad, DROpts }
static boolean AEPTIMEOUT = 1
static str IMFRegList[] = { ContainerInfo }
static str IMF{} = { Mode = 3, MonitorFreq = 5,
RegisterRetryLimit = 3 }
static int ContainerOpts{} = { RunInContainer=0,
PassCInfo=1 }
int ShutdownGracePeriod = 90
str ResourceSet
int WorkLoad{}

```

```
str DROpts{  
}
```

For more information about configuring WPARs, refer to *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

WPAR agent notes

- [Using the WPAR agent with IMF](#)
- [Configuring the WPAR agent for DR in a Global Cluster environment](#)
- [Using the IP agent with WPAR](#)

Using the WPAR agent with IMF

If you use IMF for intelligent resource monitoring, review the following recommendations.

- Set the value of the MonitorFreq key to a high value to ensure that the agent does not run the traditional monitor function frequently
- Monitor the health of the storage, on which the WPAR root is created, using one of the storage agents such as Mount or Volume. The WPAR agent should have a dependency on the storage agent as depicted in [Dependencies](#)

Configuring the WPAR agent for DR in a Global Cluster environment

For information about configuring the WPAR agent for DR in a Global Cluster environment, refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Virtualization Guide*.

Using the IP agent with WPAR

When you want to monitor an IP within a WPAR, the IP resource should depend on the WPAR resource. Any other resources within WPAR should be made dependent on the IP resource.

Debug log levels

The WPAR agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_5

MemCPUAllocator agent

Use the MemCPUAllocator agent to allocate CPU and memory to an IBM AIX dedicated partition. Set this resource's attribute values to specify the amount of CPU and memory that you want to allocate to a service group on a DLPAR. Configure this resource as a leaf node in the service group dependency tree.

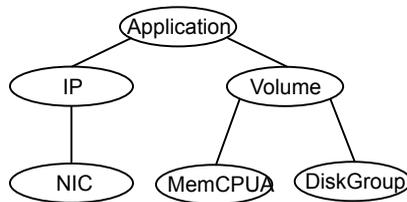
For prerequisites and other important information about this agent:

See [“MemCPUAllocator agent notes”](#) on page 211.

Dependencies

Set the MemCPUAllocator resource as a leaf node in a resource dependency tree. Select the amount of CPU and memory that you want the DLPAR to have before it comes online.

Figure 5-5 Sample service group that includes a MemCPUAllocator resource, where the MemCPUA resource represents the MemCPUAllocator resource



Agent functions

- Online
- The MemCPUAllocator agent dynamically allocates the required amount of memory and CPU to the DLPAR through the Hardware Management Console (HMC).
- The agent does not allocate additional memory if there is memory already allocated to the DLPAR that was not allocated by any other MemCPUAllocator resource and that extra memory is more than what is required by MemCPUAllocator resource.
 - The agent does not allocate additional CPU if there is CPU already allocated to the DLPAR that was not allocated by any other MemCPUAllocator resource and that extra CPU is more than what is required by MemCPUAllocator resource.

Offline	The agent deallocates the amount of memory and CPU it acquired during the online agent function. It then returns the resources back to the pool.
Monitor	<p>Checks that the online agent function succeeded. If it succeeded, then the monitor agent function reports the resource state as ONLINE. If it did not succeed, then the monitor agent function reports the resource state as OFFLINE.</p> <p>If the agent is not able to allocate the required resources during the online agent function, the subsequent monitor reports OFFLINE and the resource faults. Because the resource is a leaf node, VCS engine stops bringing other resources online and marks the group as FAULTED. The VCS engine then tries to bring the group online on some other DLPAR. This check ensures that the agent can dynamically allocate the resources that the service group requires for the DLPAR.</p>

Attributes

Table 5-13 summarizes the required attributes for the MemCPUAllocator agent.

Table 5-13 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
ManagedSystem	<p>The name of the managed system that contains the partition.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: mymachine</p>
HMC	<p>Name of the HMC</p> <p>The list of HMCs that control the managed systems. The agent tries to connect to any HMC on this list in the order that they are specified.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-vector</p> <p>Example: HMC = { myhmc1, myhmc2 }</p>

Table 5-14 summarizes the optional attributes for the MemCPUAllocator agent.

Table 5-14 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
MemoryRequired	<p>Amount of RAM (in MB) that you want to allocate.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 256</p>
User	<p>Specifies the user of HMC(s) which has the permission to allocate and deallocate the resources of the DLPAR on which the resource is configured.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default: hscroot</p> <p>Example: hmcuser</p>
MemoryCritical	<p>Specifies whether the memory allocation is critical. A value of 0 indicates that the online agent function should go ahead even when the required memory was not successfully allocated.</p> <p>Type-dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 1</p>
CPURequired	<p>The number of dedicated CPUs that you want to allocate.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: 2</p>
CPUCritical	<p>Specifies whether the CPU allocation is critical. A value of 0 indicates that the online agent function should proceed even when the required CPU was not successfully allocated.</p> <p>Type-dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Example: 1</p>

Resource type definition

The resource type definition for this agent:

```
type MemCPUAllocator (
    static int NumThreads = 1
```

```
static str ArgList[] = { ManagedSystem, HMC,  
MemoryRequired, MemoryCritical, CPUCritical, CPURequired, User }  
str ManagedSystem  
str HMC[]  
str User = "hscroot"  
str MemoryRequired  
str CPURequired  
boolean CPUCritical = 0  
boolean MemoryCritical = 0  
)  
)
```

MemCPUAllocator agent notes

The MemCPUAllocator agent has the following notes:

- See [“Configuring password free SSH communication between VCS nodes and HMC”](#) on page 211.
- See [“Dynamic resource allocation scenarios”](#) on page 211.
- See [“Configuring MemCPUAllocator”](#) on page 215.

Configuring password free SSH communication between VCS nodes and HMC

To use remote command operations on the HMC, you must have SSH installed on the DLPAR nodes in the VCS cluster. You must configure the HMC to allow password free SSH access from these partitions. Refer to the appropriate IBM AIX documentation for information.

To verify that you have password free SSH access

- ◆ From each DLPAR in the cluster, execute the following command to test if the password free access works.

```
Eagle> ssh -l hscroot hmc2.veritas.com  
Last login:Thur Jun 16 22:46:51 2005 from 10.182.9.34  
hscroot@hmc2:~>
```

Once each node can connect to the HMC using SSH without a password, you can start to use the MemCPUAllocator agent.

Dynamic resource allocation scenarios

This section describes different examples of the resource allocation scenarios that the MemCPUAllocator agent can handle. For ease of explanation, consider only the memory resource in these examples. CPU resource implementation is similar.

Consider two DLPARs named Eagle and Vulture. These DLPARs are configured with the following minimum and maximum values memory values.

[Table 5-15](#) summarizes the minimum and maximum memory for the DLPARs Eagle and Vulture.

Table 5-15 The minimum and maximum memory for the DLPARs Eagle and Vulture

DLPAR	Minimum	Maximum
Eagle	512 MB	2 GB
Vulture	512 MB	2 GB

Two service groups SG1 and SG2 have the following resource requirements.

[Table 5-16](#) summarizes the memory that is required for the service group SG1 and SG2.

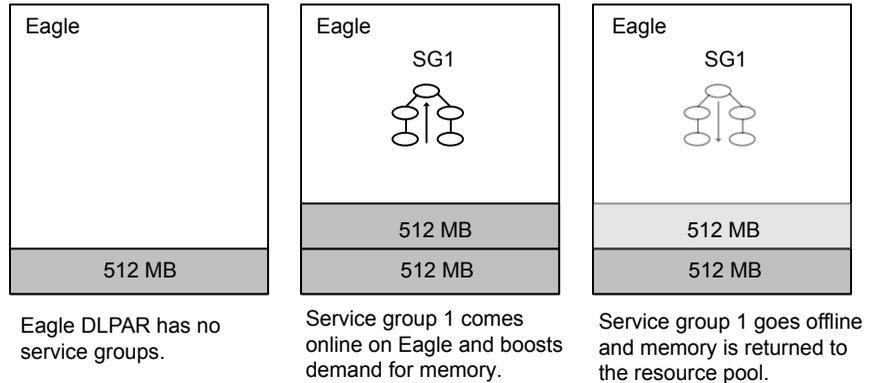
Table 5-16 The memory that is required for service group SG1 and SG2

Service group	Required memory
SG1	512 MB
SG2	512 MB

Scenario 1: A DLPAR node has minimum resources

Assume that the DLPARs start with the minimum values for memory. When SG1 is brought online on Eagle, the online agent function for the agent attempts to allocate 512 MB to Eagle from the free pool. The agent retains the minimum resources for the DLPAR's overhead operations and allocates resources for the service group in addition to the existing memory. For SG1 to come online the agent allocates an additional 512 MB to Eagle. After this allocation the total current memory for eagle is 1 GB. If SG1 goes offline, the agent deallocates the 512 MB that it allocated when the service group came online. This deallocation brings back the current memory of Eagle to 512 MB.

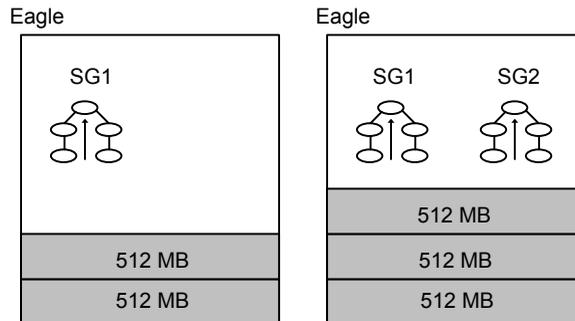
Figure 5-6 Bringing a service group online and taking it offline on a DLPAR



Scenario 2: Bringing another service group online

In this scenario, the Eagle DLPAR starts with 512 MB, and has SG1 online on it. It uses a total of 1 GB of memory. If SG2 is brought up on Eagle, the agent allocates an additional 512 MB of memory to Eagle. This reallocation brings the total memory to 1.5 GB.

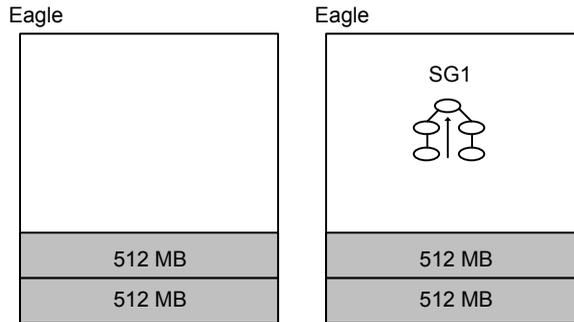
Figure 5-7 Bringing another service group online on a DLPAR



Scenario 3: DLPAR has required resources

Instead of starting with 512 MB, Eagle starts with 1 GB of initial memory. Eagle has 512 MB more than its minimum amount. If SG1 is brought online on Eagle, the agent determines that Eagle has an extra 512 MB more than its minimum. No service groups use this extra 512 MB. The agent does not allocate any additional memory to Eagle. SG1 is brought online on Eagle and the current memory for Eagle stays 1 GB.

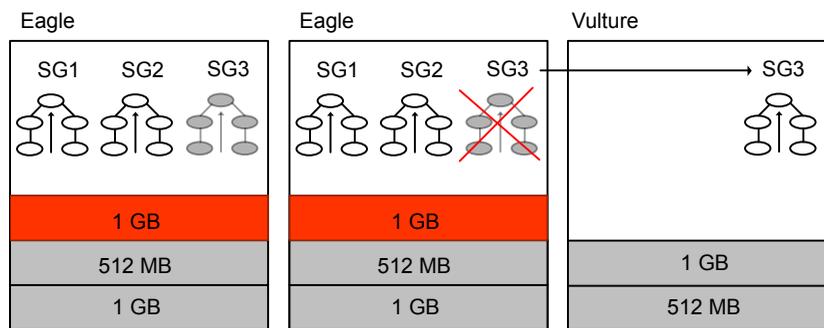
Figure 5-8 DLPAR Eagle starting with 1 GB of initial memory



Scenario 4: Cannot allocate required resources

Consider the stage in Scenario 2, where SG1 and SG2 are both online on Eagle, which brings its current memory to 1.5 GB. An additional service group SG3 enters the picture and requires 1 GB memory. SG3 tries to come up on Eagle. The agent determines that allocating 1 GB more memory to Eagle exceeds its maximum limit of 2 GB. The agent therefore does not allocate the memory and the online agent function fails, which leads to a resource fault. This resource fault makes the VCS engine stop the online of SG3 on Eagle and try it on Vulture. If Vulture starts with 512 MB and the agent allocates an additional 1 GB to Vulture, its current memory is 1.5 GB. SG3 can fail over and come online on Vulture.

Figure 5-9 Exceeding the maximum amount of memory on a DLPAR



Scenario 5: Service group failover

As in Scenario 2, SG1 and SG2 are both online on Eagle, which brings its current memory to 1.5 GB. Vulture has a current memory configuration of 512 MB.

If you switch the service groups from Eagle to Vulture:

- The MemCPUAllocator agent's offline agent function deallocates 1 GB from Eagle (512 MB for SG1 and 512 MB for SG2).
- The VCS engine migrates SG1 and SG2 to Vulture and the agent's online agent function allocates 1 GB to Vulture. This allocation brings Vulture's memory to 1.5 GB.

Configuring MemCPUAllocator

Before you can use the MemCPUAllocator agent, you need to set up SSH access between the HMC and the DLPAR nodes. You must also make sure to configure the MemCPUAllocator resource as a leaf node in the service group's dependency tree in the main.cf file.

See [Figure 5-5](#) on page 208.

Provide values to the MemCPUAllocator resource to specify the resource requirements for that service group. For example, if a service group needs 512 MB memory and two CPUs to start with, the MemCPUAllocator resource definition resembles:

```
MemCPUAllocator mymem (  
    ManagedSystem @eagle = eagle-server  
    ManagedSystem @vulture = vulture-server  
    HMC = { testhmc }  
    RequiredMemory = 512  
    RequiredCPU = 2  
    MemoryCritical = 1  
    CPUCritical = 1  
)
```

Debug log levels

The MemCPUAllocator agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2

LPAR agent

The LPAR agent brings online, takes offline, and monitors AIX logical partitions (LPARs). VCS monitors and manages LPARs and uses the LPAR agent to make LPARs highly available. The LPAR which is a VCS node and controls other LPARs on the physical server is referred to as management LPAR.

Each managed system (physical server with AIX logical partitions) uses a Hardware Management Console (HMC) to manage the software configuration and operation

of LPARs. The HMC also monitors and identifies hardware problems. The LPAR agent communicates with the HMCs to manage and check the status of LPARs.

The LPAR agent supports deployment of a redundant HMC. AIX virtualization supports two HMCs and you can use two HMCs in your LPAR resource configuration. If one HMC fails, the LPAR agent communicates with the other HMC. Hence, you need to set up passwordless SSH access for HMCs on all VCS systems in the cluster.

See [“Required attributes for LPAR agent”](#) on page 217.

The LPAR agent also provides protection against failure of the virtual input output server (VIO server). You can run multiple VIO servers on a single system. If one VIO server fails, the LPAR agent enables communication through the other VIO servers.

See [“Optional attributes for LPAR agent”](#) on page 217.

All the nodes of the cluster, where the LPAR is configured to be able to failover, should have access to the OS image.

See [“Notes for LPAR agent”](#) on page 219.

The PhysicalServer attribute of the system and the SysDownPolicy attribute of the group must be configured for LPAR resources.

See [“Group attribute for LPAR agent”](#) on page 218. and See [“System attribute for LPAR agent”](#) on page 218.

Dependencies for LPAR agent

There exists no dependency for the LPAR resource.

Agent functions for LPAR agent

Online	Starts the LPAR
Offline	Stops the LPAR
Monitor	Monitors the status of the LPAR
Clean	Stops the LPAR forcefully
Open	Blocks migration of the management LPAR
Shutdown	Unblocks migration of the management LPAR

Required attributes for LPAR agent

Table 5-17

Required attribute	Description
LPARName	Name of the logical partition (LPAR) Type-dimension: string-scalar Default: NA Example: "lpar1"
MCName	Names of the HMCs that manage LPARs. The value of this attribute cannot be local to a management LPAR because all LPARs in a VCS cluster must use the same HMC names. Note: The value is a string that can be IPv4 or IPV6 addresses or hostnames of HMCs. Type-dimension: string-keylist Default: n/a Example: { hmc1, hmc2 }
MCUser	Names of the users to communicate with HMCs using passwordless SSH. You must provide the MCName and MCUser value pairs in the proper order. For example, if you specify MCName as { hmc1, hmc2 } and MCUser as { hmcuser1, hmcuser2 }, hmcuser1 can communicate with hmc1 and hmcuser2 can communicate with hmc2. Type-dimension: string-keylist Default: { hscroot } Example: { hmcuser1, hmcuser2 }

Optional attributes for LPAR agent

Table 5-18

Optional attributes	Description
ProfileName	Name of the profile used to start LPAR. If you do not provide the profile name, agent uses the default profile.

Table 5-18 (continued)

Optional attributes	Description
VIOSName	<p>Names of the virtual input output servers (VIO servers) that provide virtual resources to the LPAR. If there are multiple VIO servers available for an LPAR, you must specify names of all the VIO servers in the attribute so that VCS does not treat the LPAR as faulted till all the VIO servers go down.</p> <p>If one VIO server fails, LPARs can perform input and output operations through the other VIO servers. When all the VIO servers specified in the VIOSName attribute are down, VCS fails over the managed LPAR to another system.</p> <p>If you do not specify VIOSName, the LPAR agent does not fail over the LPAR after a VIO server crash.</p> <p>Type-dimension: string-keylist Default: n/a Example: { vios1, vios2 }</p>

Group attribute for LPAR agent

Table 5-19

Group attribute	Description
SysDownPolicy	<p>Is a service group attribute that is relevant if LPAR resources are configured.</p> <p>For more information, refer to the <i>Veritas Storage Foundation™ and High Availability Solutions Virtualization Guide</i> for AIX and the <i>Veritas™ Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i>.</p>

System attribute for LPAR agent

Table 5-20

System attribute	Description
PhysicalServer	<p>Name of the physical Power server name on which LPAR is running.</p> <p>For more information, refer to the <i>Veritas™ Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i>.</p>

Resource type definition for LPAR agent

The resource type definition for the agent is as follows

```
type LPAR (  
    static boolean IntentionalOffline = 1  
    static str AgentFile = "/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/Script51Agent"  
    static int OfflineWaitLimit = 3  
    static int OnlineWaitLimit = 3  
    static str ArgList[] = { LPARName, MCUser, MCName,  
        ProfileName, State, IState, VIOSName }  
    static boolean AEPTimeout = 1  
    str LPARName  
    str MCUser = { hscroot }  
    str MCName[]  
    str ProfileName  
    str VIOSName{}  
)
```

Notes for LPAR agent

The LPAR agent has the following notes:

VCS requirements to manage the LPAR agent

Supported hardware and software versions:

- VIOS version 2.1.3.10-FP-23 and above
- HMC version 7.2.0.0
- Power5, Power6, or Power7

Configuring password-less SSH communication between VCS nodes and HMC

To perform remote command operations on HMC, you must have:

- SSH installed on each LPAR that is a VCS system in the cluster.
- Configured HMCs to allow passwordless SSH access from LPARs.

For more information, refer to the appropriate IBM AIX documentation.

Verifying password-less SSH status

Verify if each VCS system can connect to HMC using password-less SSH

```
Eagle> ssh -l hscroot hmc2.veritas.com
Last login:Thur Jun 16 22:46:51 2005 from 10.182.9.34
hscroot@hmc2:~>
```

You can start using the LPAR agent when each VCS system can connect to HMC using SSH without a password.

Live Partition Mobility support for LPARs managed by VCS

Live Partition Mobility (LPM) functionality lets you migrate an AIX LPAR and the hosted applications from one physical server to another physical server.

For more information, refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation™ and High Availability Solutions Virtualization Guide* for AIX.

The LPAR agent blocks LPM functionality for the management LPAR that hosts VCS when it manages and monitors LPAR resources. When VCS stops managing LPARs, LPM functionality is available for the VCS system. The LPM functionality to migrate the management LPAR remains blocked if the LPAR agent crashes or is terminated.

To allow live migration of the management LPAR

- 1 Check if the `/usr/lib/dr/scripts/all/vcs_blockmigrate.sh` file exists.
- 2 If the file exists, unblock LPM/`usr/sbin/drmgr -u vcs_blockmigrate.sh`.

Debug log levels for LPAR agent

The LPAR agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_4, DBG_5

Infrastructure and support agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the infrastructure and support agents](#)
- [NotifierMngr agent](#)
- [Proxy agent](#)
- [Phantom agent](#)
- [RemoteGroup agent](#)

About the infrastructure and support agents

Use the infrastructure and support agents to monitor Veritas components and VCS objects.

NotifierMngr agent

Starts, stops, and monitors a notifier process, making it highly available. The notifier process manages the reception of messages from VCS and the delivery of those messages to SNMP consoles and SMTP servers.

Refer to the *Admin Guide* for a description of types of events that generate notification. See the `notifier(1)` manual page to configure notification from the command line.

You cannot dynamically change the attributes of the NotifierMngr agent using the `hares -modify` command. Changes made using this command are only effective after restarting the notifier.

Dependency

The NotifierMngr resource can depend on the NIC resource.

Agent functions

Online	Starts the notifier process with its required arguments.
Offline	VCS sends a <code>SIGABORT</code> . If the process does not exit within one second, VCS sends a <code>SIGKILL</code> .
Monitor	Monitors the notifier process.
Clean	Sends <code>SIGKILL</code> .

State definitions

ONLINE	Indicates that the Notifier process is running.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the Notifier process is not running.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the user did not specify the required attribute for the resource.

Attributes

Table 6-1 Required attributes for AIX

Required attribute	Description
SnmpConsoles	<p>Specifies the machine names of the SNMP managers and the severity level of the messages to be delivered. The severity levels of messages are Information, Warning, Error, and SevereError. Specifying a given severity level for messages generates delivery of all messages of equal or higher severity.</p> <p>Note: SnmpConsoles is a required attribute if SntpServer is not specified; otherwise, SnmpConsoles is an optional attribute. Specify both SnmpConsoles and SntpServer if desired.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-association</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>"172.29.10.89" = Error, "172.29.10.56" = Information</p>

Table 6-1 Required attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
SmtServer	<p>Specifies the machine name of the SMTP server.</p> <p>Note: SmtServer is a required attribute if SnmpConsoles is not specified; otherwise, SmtServer is an optional attribute. You can specify both SmtServer and SnmpConsoles if desired.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "smtp.example.com"</p>

Table 6-2 Optional attributes for AIX

Optional attribute	Description
MessagesQueue	<p>Size of the VCS engine's message queue. Minimum value is 30.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 30</p>
NotifierListeningPort	<p>Any valid, unused TCP/IP port number.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 14144</p>
NotifierSourceIP	<p>If this attribute is populated, all the notifications sent from the notifier (SMTP and SNMP) will be sent from the interface having this IP address.</p> <p>Note: Make sure that the SourceIP given in this attribute is present in the /etc/hosts file or is DNS-resolvable.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "10.209.77.111"</p>
SmtFromPath	<p>Set to a valid email address, if you want the notifier to use a custom email address in the FROM: field.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "usera@example.com"</p>

Table 6-2 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
Smtprcipients	<p>Specifies the email address where SMTP sends information and the severity level of the messages. The severity levels of messages are Information, Warning, Error, and SevereError. Specifying a given severity level for messages indicates that all messages of equal or higher severity are received.</p> <p>Note: Smtprcipients is a required attribute if you specify Smtprserver.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-association</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>"james@example.com" = SevereError, "admin@example.com" = Warning</pre>
Smtprreturnpath	<p>Set to a valid email address, if you want the notifier to use a custom email address in the Return-Path: <> field.</p> <p>If the mail server specified in Smtprserver does not support SMTP VRFY command, then you need to set the Smtprvrfyoff to 1 in order for the Smtprreturnpath value to take effect.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "usera@example.com"</p>
Smtprservertimeout	<p>This attribute represents the time in seconds notifier waits for a response from the mail server for the SMTP commands it has sent to the mail server. This value can be increased if you notice that the mail server is taking a longer duration to reply back to the SMTP commands sent by notifier.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 10</p>
Smtprservervrfyoff	<p>Set this value to 1 if your mail server does not support SMTP VRFY command. If you set this value to 1, the notifier does not send a SMTP VRFY request to the mail server specified in Smtprserver attribute while sending emails.</p> <p>Type and dimension: boolean-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>

Table 6-2 Optional attributes for AIX (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
SnmpCommunity	Specifies the community ID for the SNMP manager. Type and dimension: string-scalar Default: public
SnmpdTrapPort	Port on the SNMP console machine where SNMP traps are sent. If you specify more than one SNMP console, all consoles use this value. Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 162
EngineListeningPort	Change this attribute if the VCS engine is listening on a port other than its default port. Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 14141

Resource type definition

```

type NotifierMngr (
  static int RestartLimit = 3
  static str ArgList[] = { EngineListeningPort, MessagesQueue,
  NotifierListeningPort, NotifierSourceIP, SnmpdTrapPort,
  SnmpCommunity, SnmpConsoles, SntpServer, SntpServerVrfyOff,
  SntpServerTimeout, SntpReturnPath, SntpFromPath,
  SntpRecipients }
  int EngineListeningPort = 14141
  int MessagesQueue = 30
  int NotifierListeningPort = 14144
  str NotifierSourceIP
  int SnmpdTrapPort = 162
  str SnmpCommunity = public
  str SnmpConsoles{}
  str SntpServer
  boolean SntpServerVrfyOff = 0
  int SntpServerTimeout = 10
  str SntpReturnPath
  str SntpFromPath

```

```
str Smtprcipients{  
}
```

Sample configuration

In the following configuration, the NotifierMngr agent is configured to run with two resource groups: NicGrp and Grp1. NicGrp contains the NIC resource and a Phantom resource that enables VCS to determine the online and offline status of the group. See the Phantom agent for more information on verifying the status of groups that only contain OnOnly or Persistent resources such as the NIC resource. You must enable NicGrp to run as a parallel group on both systems.

Grp1 contains the NotifierMngr resource (ntfr) and a Proxy resource (nicproxy), configured for the NIC resource in the first group.

In this example, NotifierMngr has a dependency on the Proxy resource.

Note: Only one instance of the notifier process can run in a cluster. The process cannot run in a parallel group.

The NotifierMngr resource sets up notification for all events to the SNMP console `snmpserv`. In this example, only messages of `SevereError` level are sent to the SMTP server (`smtp.example.com`), and the recipient (`vcsadmin@example.com`).

Configuration

```
system north  
  
system south  
  
group NicGrp (  
    SystemList = { north, south }  
    AutoStartList = { north }  
    Parallel = 1  
)  
  
    Phantom my_phantom (  
    )  
  
    NIC    NicGrp_en0 (  
        Enabled = 1  
        Device   = en0  
        NetworkType = ether
```

```

    )

group Grp1 (
    SystemList = { north, south }
    AutoStartList = { north }
)

Proxy nicproxy(
    TargetResName = "NicGrp_en0"
)

NotifierMngr ntfr (
    SnmpConsoles = { snmpserv = Information }
    Smtperver = "smtp.example.com"
    Smtpercipients = { "vcsadmin@example.com" =
        SevereError }
)

ntfr requires nicproxy

// resource dependency tree
//
//     group Grp1
//     {
//         NotifierMngr ntfr
//         {
//             Proxy nicproxy
//         }
//     }

```

IPv6 configuration for AIX

While the NotifierMngr resource can work without the NIC resource, Symantec recommends this dependency.

If the “en0” is a virtual device on AIX, then the NetworkHosts attribute is required, otherwise this resource takes an UNKNOWN state.

```

group ClusterService (
    SystemList = { sysA = 0, sysB = 1 }
    AutoStartList = { sysA, sysB }
    OnlineRetryLimit = 3
    OnlineRetryInterval = 120

```

```
)  
  
NIC csgnic (  
  Device = en0  
  NetworkHosts = {"fe80::88c4:e0ff:fe00:c002"}  
)  
  
NotifierMngr ntfr (  
  SnmpConsoles = { "3ffe:556::1000:5761" = SevereError }  
  SntpServer = "megami.veritas.com"  
  SntpRecipients = { "john_doe@symantec.com" =  
    SevereError }  
)  
ntfr requires csgnic
```

Debug log levels

The NotifierMngr agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2, DBG_3, DBG_5

Proxy agent

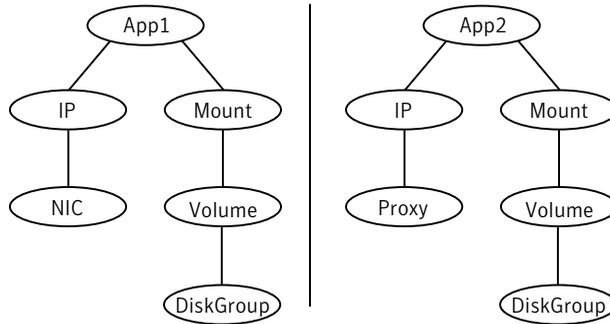
The Proxy agent mirrors the state of another resource on a local or remote system. It provides a means to specify and modify one resource and have its state reflected by its proxies. You can use the agent when you need to replicate the status of a resource.

A Proxy resource can only point to None or OnOnly type of resources, and can reside either in a failover or a parallel group. A target resource and its proxy cannot be in the same group.

Dependencies

No dependencies exist for the Proxy resource.

Figure 6-1 Sample service group that includes a Proxy resource



Agent functions

Monitor Determines status based on the target resource status.

Attributes

Table 6-3 Required attribute

Required attribute	Description
TargetResName	Name of the target resource that the Proxy resource mirrors. The target resource must be in a different resource group than the Proxy resource. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "nic1"

Table 6-4 Optional attribute

Optional attribute	Description
TargetSysName	Mirrors the status of the TargetResName attribute on systems that the TargetSysName variable specifies. If this attribute is not specified, the Proxy resource assumes the system is local. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "sysa"

Resource type definition

```
type Proxy (  
    static str ArgList[] = { TargetResName, TargetSysName,  
        "TargetResName:Probed", "TargetResName:State" }  
    static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60  
    static str Operations = None  
    str TargetResName  
    str TargetSysName  
)
```

Sample configurations

Configuration 1

```
Proxy proxy1 (  
    TargetResName = "nic1"  
)
```

Configuration 2

The proxy resource mirrors the state of the resource nic2 on sysa.

```
Proxy proxy1(  
    TargetResName = "nic2"  
    TargetSysName = "sysa"  
)
```

Configuration 3

The proxy resource mirrors the state of the resource mnic on the local system; note that target resource is in grp1, and the proxy is in grp2; a target resource and its proxy cannot be in the same group.

```
group grp1 (  
    SystemList = { sysa, sysb }  
    AutoStartList = { sysa }  
)  
  
MultiNICA mnic (  
    Device@sysa = { en0 = "10.128.8.42", en1 = "10.128.8.42" }  
    Device@sysb = { en0 = "10.128.8.43", en1 = "10.128.8.43" }  
    NetMask = "255.255.255.0"  
    Gateway = "10.128.8.1"
```

```
BroadcastAddr = "10.128.8.255"
Options = "mtu 1400"
)

IPMultiNIC ip1 (
    Address = "10.128.8.78"
    NetMask = "255.255.255.0"
    MultiNICAResName = mnic
    Options = "mtu 1400"
)
ip1 requires mnic

group grp2 (
    SystemList = { sysa, sysb }
    AutoStartList = { sysa }
)

IPMultiNIC ip2 (
    Address = "10.128.8.79"
    NetMask = "255.255.255.0"
    MultiNICAResName = mnic
    Options = "mtu 1400"
)
Proxy proxy (
    TargetResName = mnic
)
ip2 requires proxy
```

Debug log levels

The Proxy agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1, DBG_2

Phantom agent

The agent enables VCS to determine the status of parallel service groups that do not include OnOff resources, which are resources that VCS can start and stop. Without the "dummy" resource provided by this agent, VCS cannot assess the status of groups that only contain None (Persistent) and OnOnly resources because the state of these resources is not considered in the process of determining whether a group is online. Refer to the *VCS Administrator's Guide* for information on categories of service groups and resources.

Do not use the Phantom resource in failover service groups.

Also, the Phantom resource should not be used in service groups that don't contain any resources.

Note: Do not attempt manual online or offline operations on the Phantom resource at the resource level. Do not use `hares` commands on the Phantom resource at the resource level. Unpredictable behavior results when you try a manual online or offline procedure or an `hares` command on a Phantom resource. You can perform commands on the service group that contains the Phantom resource.

Dependencies

No dependencies exist for the Phantom resource.

Figure 6-2 Sample service group that includes a Phantom resource



Agent functions

Monitor Determines status based on the status of the service group.

Resource type definition

```
type Phantom (  
)
```

Sample configurations

Configuration 1

```
Phantom boo (  
)
```

Configuration 2

The following example shows a complete `main.cf`, in which the `FileNone` resource and the `Phantom` resource are in the same group.

```
include "types.cf"  
cluster PhantomCluster
```

```
system sysa (
)
system sysb (
)
group phantomgroup (
  SystemList = { sysa = 0, sysb = 1 }
  AutoStartList = { sysa }
  Parallel = 1
)
FileNone my_file_none (
  PathName = "/tmp/file_none"
)
Phantom my_phantom (
)
// resource dependency tree
//
// group maingroup
// {
//   Phantom my_Phantom
//   FileNone my_file_none
// }
```

RemoteGroup agent

The RemoteGroup agent establishes dependencies between applications that are configured on different VCS clusters. For example, you configure an Apache resource in a local cluster, and a MySQL resource in a remote cluster. In this example, the Apache resource depends on the MySQL resource. You can use the RemoteGroup agent to establish this dependency between these two resources.

With the RemoteGroup agent, you can monitor or manage a service group that exists in a remote cluster.

Some points about configuring the RemoteGroup resource follow:

- For each remote service group that you want to monitor or manage, you must configure a corresponding RemoteGroup resource in the local cluster.
- Multiple RemoteGroup resources in a local cluster can manage corresponding multiple remote service groups in different remote clusters.
- You can include the RemoteGroup resource in any kind of resource or service group dependency tree.
- A combination of the state of the local service group and the state of the remote service group determines the state of the RemoteGroup resource.

Symantec supports the RemoteGroup agent when:

- When it points to a global group
The RemoteGroup agent must then map the state of the global group in the local cluster.
- When it is configured inside a local parallel service group
The RemoteGroup resources on all cluster nodes monitor the same remote service group unless its attributes are localized.
- When it is configured inside a local failover service group

For more information on the functionality of this agent refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

Dependency

As a best practice, establish a RemoteGroup resource dependency on a NIC resource. Symantec recommends that the RemoteGroup resource not be by itself in a service group.

Agent functions

Online	Brings the remote service group online. For more information: See Table 6-5 on page 235.
Offline	Takes the remote service group offline. For more information: See Table 6-5 on page 235.
Monitor	Monitors the state of the remote service group. The true state of the remote service group is monitored only on the online node in the local cluster. For more information: See Table 6-5 on page 235.
Clean	If the RemoteGroup resource faults, the Clean function takes the remote service group offline. For more information: See Table 6-5 on page 235.

State definitions

ONLINE	Indicates that the remote service group is in an ONLINE state. If the ReturnIntOffline attribute is not set to RemotePartial, then the remote service group is either in an ONLINE or PARTIAL state.
--------	---

OFFLINE	<p>Indicates that the remote service group is in an OFFLINE or FAULTED state. The true state of the remote service group is monitored only on the online node in the local cluster.</p> <p>The RemoteGroup resource returns intentional offline if the attribute ReturnIntOffline is set to an appropriate value.</p>
FAULTED	<p>Indicates that the RemoteGroup resource has unexpectedly gone offline.</p>
UNKNOWN	<p>Indicates that a problem exists either with the configuration or the ability of the RemoteGroup resource to determine the state of the remote service group.</p>

Attributes

Table 6-5 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
IpAddress	<p>The IP address or DNS name of a node in the remote cluster. The IP address can be either physical or virtual.</p> <p>When configuring a virtual IP address of a remote cluster, do not configure the IP resource as a part of the remote service group.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Examples: "www.example.com" or "11.183.12.214"</p>
Port	<p>This is a required attribute when the remote cluster listens on a port other than the default value of 14141.</p> <p>See Table 6-6 on page 238.</p>
GroupName	<p>The name of the service group on the remote cluster that you want the RemoteGroup agent to monitor or manage.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "DBGrp"</p>

Table 6-5 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
VCSSysName	<p>You must set this attribute to either the VCS system name or the ANY value.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ ANY The RemoteGroup resource goes online if the remote service group is online on any node in the remote cluster. ■ <i>VCSSysName</i> Use the name of a VCS system in a remote cluster where you want the remote service group to be online when the RemoteGroup resource goes online. Use this to establish a one-to-one mapping between the nodes of the local and remote clusters. <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "vcssys1" or "ANY"</p>
ControlMode	<p>Select only one of these values to determine the mode of operation of the RemoteGroup resource: MonitorOnly, OnlineOnly, or OnOff.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ OnOff The RemoteGroup resource brings the remote service group online or takes it offline. When you set the VCSSysName attribute to ANY, the SysList attribute of the remote service group determines the node where the remote service group onlines. ■ MonitorOnly The RemoteGroup resource only monitors the state of the remote service group. The RemoteGroup resource cannot online or offline the remote service group. Make sure that you bring the remote service group online before you online the RemoteGroup resource. ■ OnlineOnly The RemoteGroup resource only brings the remote service group online. The RemoteGroup resource cannot take the remote service group offline. When you set the VCSSysName attribute to ANY, the SysList attribute of the remote service group determines the node where the remote service group onlines. <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>

Table 6-5 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attribute	Description
Username	<p>This is the login user name for the remote cluster.</p> <p>When you set the ControlMode attribute to OnOff or OnlineOnly, the Username must have administrative privileges for the remote service group that you specify in the GroupName attribute.</p> <p>When you use the RemoteGroup Wizard to enter your username data, you need to enter your username and the domain name in separate fields. For a cluster that has the Symantec Product Authentication Service, you do not need to enter the domain name.</p> <p>For a secure remote cluster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Local Unix user user@nodename—where the nodename is the name of the node that is specified in the IpAddress attribute. Do not set the DomainType attribute. ■ NIS or NIS+ user user@domainName—where domainName is the name of the NIS or NIS+ domain for the user. You must set the value of the DomainType attribute to either to nis or nisplus. <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ For a cluster without the Symantec Product Authentication Service: "johnsmith" ■ For a secure remote cluster: "foobar@example.com"
Password	<p>This is the password that corresponds to the user that you specify in the Username attribute. You must encrypt the password with the <code>vcscrypt -agent</code> command.</p> <p>Note: Do not use the <code>vcscrypt</code> utility when entering passwords from a configuration wizard or the Cluster Manager (Java Console).</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>

Table 6-6 Optional attributes

Optional attribute	Description
DomainType	<p>For a secure remote cluster only, enter the domain type information for the specified user.</p> <p>For users who have the domain type unixpwd, you do not have to set this attribute.</p> <p>Type: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "nis", "nisplus"</p>
BrokerIp	<p>For a secure remote cluster only. If you need the RemoteGroup agent to communicate to a specific authentication broker, set the value of this attribute to the broker's IP address.</p> <p>Type: string-scalar</p> <p>Example: "128.11.295.51"</p>
Port	<p>The port where the remote engine listens for requests.</p> <p>This is an optional attribute, unless the remote cluster listens on a port other than the default value of 14141.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 14141</p>
OfflineWaitTime	<p>The maximum expected time in seconds that the remote service group may take to offline. VCS calls the clean function for the RemoteGroup resource if the remote service group takes a longer time to offline than the time that you have specified for this attribute.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>

Table 6-6 Optional attributes (*continued*)

Optional attribute	Description
ReturnIntOffline	<p>Select one of the following values for RemoteGroup to return IntentionalOffline:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ RemotePartial—Indicates that the RemoteGroup resource returns an IntentionalOffline if the remote service group is in an ONLINE PARTIAL state. ■ RemoteOffline—Indicates that the RemoteGroup resource returns an IntentionalOffline if the remote service group is in an OFFLINE state. ■ RemoteFaulted—Indicates that the RemoteGroup resource returns an IntentionalOffline if the remote service group is OFFLINE FAULTED. <p>You can use these values in combinations with each other.</p> <p>You must set the IntentionalOffline attribute of the RemoteGroup resource type to 1 for this attribute to work properly. For more information about this attribute, see the <i>Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i>.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-vector Default: ""</p>
OfflineMonitoringNode	<p>Defines the cluster node that performs the offline monitoring of the remote service group. This is an internal attribute. Do not modify.</p>

Table 6-7 Type-level attributes

Type level attributes	Description
OnlineRetryLimit OnlineWaitLimit	<p>In case of remote service groups that take a longer time to Online, Symantec recommends that you modify the default OnlineWaitLimit and OnlineRetryLimit attributes.</p> <p>See the <i>Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i> for more information about these attributes.</p>
ToleranceLimit MonitorInterval	<p>If you expect the RemoteGroup agent to tolerate sudden offlines of the remote service group, then modify the ToleranceLimit attribute.</p> <p>See the <i>Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i> for more information about these attributes.</p>

Table 6-7 Type-level attributes (*continued*)

Type level attributes	Description
ExternalStateChange	<p>If you want the local service group to go online or offline when the RemoteGroup resource goes online or offline outside VCS control, set the attribute ExternalStateChange appropriately.</p> <p>See the <i>Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide</i> for more information about these attributes.</p>

Resource type definition

```

type RemoteGroup (
  static int OnlineRetryLimit = 2
  static int ToleranceLimit = 1
  static boolean IntentionalOffline = 1
  static str ArgList[] = { IPAddress, Port, Username, Password,
  GroupName, VCSSysName, ControlMode, OfflineWaitTime,
  DomainType, BrokerIp, ReturnIntOffline }
  str IPAddress
  int Port = 14141
  str Username
  str Password
  str GroupName
  str VCSSysName
  str ControlMode
  int OfflineWaitTime
  str DomainType
  str BrokerIp
  str ReturnIntOffline[] = {}
  temp str OfflineMonitoringNode
)

```

Debug log levels

The RemoteGroup agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_1

Testing agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the testing agents](#)
- [ElifNone agent](#)
- [FileNone agent](#)
- [FileOnOff agent](#)
- [FileOnOnly agent](#)

About the testing agents

Use the testing agents to provide high availability for program support resources. These resources are useful for testing service groups.

ElifNone agent

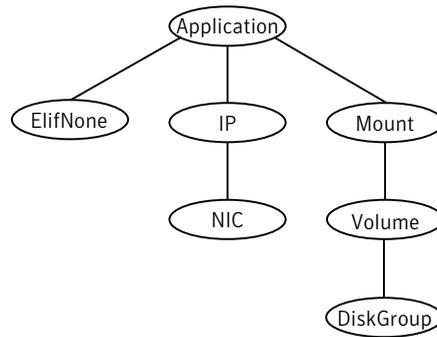
The ElifNone agent monitors a file. It checks for the file's absence.

You can use the ElifNone agent to test service group behavior. You can also use it as an impostor resource, where it takes the place of a resource for testing.

Dependencies for ElifNone agent

No dependencies exist for the ElifNone resource.

Figure 7-1 Sample service group that includes an ElifNone resource



Agent function for ElifNone agent

Monitor Checks for the specified file. If it exists, the resource faults. If it does not exist, the agent reports the resource as ONLINE.

State definitions for ElifNone agent

ONLINE Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute does not exist.

FAULTED Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute exists.

UNKNOWN Indicates that the value of the PathName attribute does not contain a file name.

Attributes for ElifNone agent

Table 7-1 Required attribute

Required attribute	Description
PathName	Specifies the complete pathname. Starts with a slash (/) preceding the file name. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/tmp/file01"

Resource type definition for ElifNone agent

```
type ElifNone (  
    static str ArgList[] = { PathName }  
    static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60  
    static str Operations = None  
    str PathName  
)
```

Sample configuration for ElifNone agent

```
ElifNone tmp_file01 (  
    PathName = "/tmp/file01"  
)
```

Debug log levels for ElifNone agent

The ElifNone agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_4, DBG_5

FileNone agent

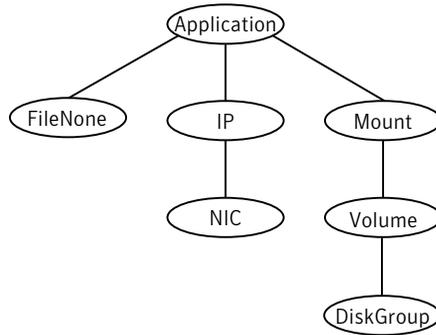
Monitors a file, checks for the file's existence.

You can use the FileNone agent to test service group behavior. You can also use it as an "impostor" resource, where it takes the place of a resource for testing.

Dependencies for FileNone agent

No dependencies exist for the FileNone resource.

Figure 7-2 Sample service group that includes an FileNone resource



Agent functions for FileNone agent

Monitor Checks for the specified file. If it exists, the agent reports the resource as ONLINE. If it does not exist, the resource faults.

State definitions for FileNone agent

ONLINE Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute exists.

FAULTED Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute does not exist.

UNKNOWN Indicates that the value of the PathName attribute does not contain a file name.

Attribute for FileNone agent

Table 7-2 Required attribute

Required attribute	Description
PathName	Specifies the complete pathname. Starts with a slash (/) preceding the file name. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/tmp/file01"

Resource type definition for FileNone agent

```
type FileNone (  
    static int AutoRestart = 1  
    static int OfflineMonitorInterval = 60  
    static str ArgList[] = { PathName }  
    static str Operations = None  
    str PathName  
)
```

Sample configuration for FileNone agent

```
FileNone tmp_file01 (  
    PathName = "/tmp/file01"  
)
```

Debug log levels for FileNone agent

The FileNone agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_4, DBG_5

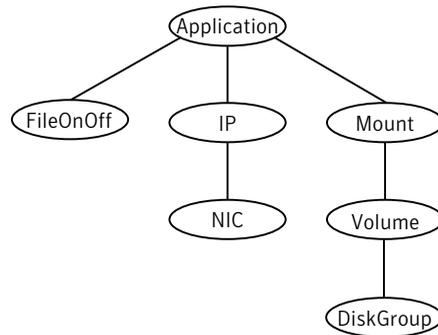
FileOnOff agent

The FileOnOff agent creates, removes, and monitors a file.

You can use the FileNone agent to test service group behavior. You can also use it as an "impostor" resource, where it takes the place of a resource for testing.

Dependencies for FileOnOff agent

No dependencies exist for the FileOnOff resource.

Figure 7-3 Sample service group that includes a FileOnOff resource

Agent functions for FileOnOff agent

Online	Creates an empty file with the specified name if the file does not already exist.
Offline	Removes the specified file.
Monitor	Checks for the specified file. If it exists, the agent reports as ONLINE. If it does not exist, the agent reports as OFFLINE.
Clean	Removes the specified file forcibly when necessary.

State definitions for FileOnOff agent

ONLINE	Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute exists.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute does not exist.
FAULTED	Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute has been removed out of VCS control.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the value of the PathName attribute does not contain a file name.

Attribute for FileOnOff agent

Table 7-3 Required attribute

Required attribute	Description
PathName	Specifies the complete pathname. Starts with a slash (/) preceding the file name. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/tmp/file01"

Resource type definition for FileOnOff agent

```
type FileOnOff (  
    static str ArgList[] = { PathName }  
    str PathName  
)
```

Sample configuration for FileOnOff agent

```
FileOnOff tmp_file01 (  
    PathName = "/tmp/file01"  
)
```

Debug log levels for FileOnOff agent

The FileOnOff agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_4, DBG_5

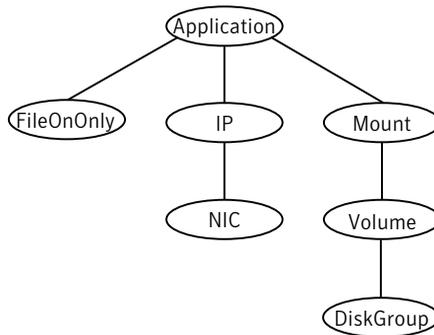
FileOnOnly agent

The FileOnOnly agent creates and monitors a file.

You can use the FileNone agent to test service group behavior. You can also use it as an "impostor" resource, where it takes the place of a resource for testing.

Dependencies for FileOnOnly agent

No dependencies exist for the FileOnOnly resource.

Figure 7-4 Sample service group that includes a FileOnOnly resource

Agent functions for FileOnOnly agent

Online	Creates an empty file with the specified name, unless one already exists.
Monitor	Checks for the specified file. If it exists, the agent reports as ONLINE. If it does not exist, the resource faults.

State definitions for FileOnOnly agent

The state definitions for this agent follow:

ONLINE	Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute exists.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute does not exist and VCS has not attempted to bring the resource online.
FAULTED	Indicates that the file specified in the PathName attribute has been removed out of VCS control.
UNKNOWN	Indicates that the value of the PathName attribute does not contain a file name.

Attribute for FileOnOnly agent

Table 7-4 Required attributes

Required attribute	Description
PathName	Specifies the complete pathname. Starts with a slash (/) preceding the file name. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "/tmp/file02"

Resource type definition for FileOnOnly agent

```
type FileOnOnly (  
    static str ArgList[] = { PathName }  
    static str Operations = OnOnly  
    str PathName  
)
```

Sample configuration for FileOnOnly agent

```
FileOnOnly tmp_file02 (  
    PathName = "/tmp/file02"  
)
```

Debug log levels for FileOnOnly agent

The FileOnOnly agent uses the following debug log levels:

DBG_4, DBG_5

Replication agents

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About the replication agents](#)
- [RVG agent](#)
- [RVGPrimary agent](#)
- [RVGSnapshot](#)
- [RVGShared agent](#)
- [RVGLogowner agent](#)
- [RVGSharedPri agent](#)

About the replication agents

Use the replication agents to provide high availability for VVR resources.

Refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide* for information on configuring the Replication agents for high availability.

RVG agent

Brings the RVG online, monitors read and write access to the RVG, and takes the RVG offline. This is a failover resource. The RVG agent enables replication between clusters. It manages the Primary VVR node in one cluster and the Secondary VVR node in another cluster. Each node can be failed over in its respective cluster. In this way, replication is made highly available.

The RVG agent manages the state of the RVG during local failovers. The RVGPrimary agent manages the role of the RVG during a wide area failover.

Using a VCS global cluster enables you to fail over the Primary role from a Primary VVR node to a Secondary VVR node.

The RVG agent includes the following key features:

- Removes potential single points of failure by enabling Primary and Secondary VVR nodes to be clustered.
- Enables you to bring a service group online to start VCS-managed applications that use VVR.
- Continues replication after a node in a cluster fails without losing updates.
- Ensures that VVR can be added to any VCS cluster by including the RVG resource type definitions.

An example configuration file for this agent that can be used as a guide when creating your configuration is located at:

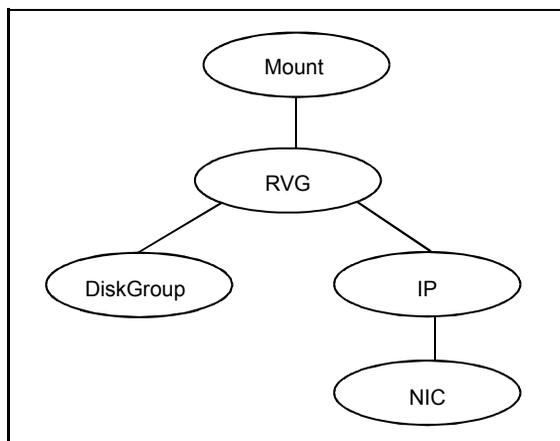
```
/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sample_vvr/RVG
```

Dependencies

The RVG resource represents the RVG (Replicated Volume Group) in the RDS (Replicated Data Set). The RVG resource is dependent on the DiskGroup resource. The RVG resource is also dependent on the IP resources that it uses for replication.

Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information on dependencies.

Figure 8-1 Sample service group for an RVG resource



Agent functions

The RVG agent has the following agent functions:

Online	Verifies whether the DiskGroup agent has recovered the RVG. If not, recovers and starts the data volumes and the Storage Replicator Log (SRL), recovers the RVG, recovers all RLINKs in the RVG, and then starts the RVG.
Offline	Stops the RVG.
Monitor	Monitors the state of the RVG using the <code>vxprint</code> command. The RVG resource monitors an RVG for local access only. It does not monitor replication.
Clean	Stops the RVG.
Info	The info entry point displays information about the replication status of a RDS.

State definitions

The RVG agent has the following state definitions:

ONLINE	Indicates that the RVG is in <code>ENABLED/ACTIVE</code> state.
OFFLINE	Indicates that the RVG is in <code>DISABLED/CLEAN</code> state.
FAULTED	The RVG resource fails if the RVG is not in the <code>ENABLED/ACTIVE</code> state.

Attributes

Table 8-1 Required attributes

Required attributes	Description
RVG	The name of the RVG being monitored. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hr_rvg"
DiskGroup	The disk group that this RVG is associated with. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hrbg"

Table 8-1 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attributes	Description
StorageDG	The name of the bunker disk group. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hr_bdg"
StorageRVG	The name of the bunker RVG. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hr_brvg"
StorageHostIds	A space-separated list of the hostids of each node in the bunker cluster. Type and dimension: string-keylist Example: "bunker_host"

Resource type definitions

The RVG agent resource type definition follows.

```
type RVG (  
    static int NumThreads = 1  
    static str ArgList[] = { RVG, DiskGroup }  
    str RVG  
    str DiskGroup  
    str StorageRVG  
    str StorageDG  
    str StorageHostIds  
)
```

Sample configurations

```
RVG rvg (  
    RVG = ApplicationRVG  
    DiskGroup = vvrldg  
    StorageRVG = ApplicationRVG  
    StorageDG = vvrldg  
    StorageHostIds = "bunker_host"  
)
```

RVGPrimary agent

The RVGPrimary agent enables migration and takeover of a VVR Replicated Volume Group (RVG) in a VCS environment. Bringing a resource of type RVGPrimary online causes the RVG on the local host to become a primary.

The agent is useful when hosts in both the primary and secondary side are clustered, in particular a VCS replicated data cluster or a VCS global cluster, to completely automate the availability of writable replicated disks to a VCS-managed application.

The RVGPrimary agent includes the following features:

- Removes the manual steps of migrating a VVR primary and secondary roles when failing over applications across a wide area.
- Minimizes the need for resynchronizing replicated volumes by attempting a migration before attempting a hard takeover.
- Waits for the two sides of a replicated data set to become completely synchronized before migrating roles.
- Supports an automatic fast failback resynchronization of a downed primary if it later returns after a takeover.
- Allows you to distinguish the Primary site after network failure or disaster
- Supports the ability to choose the Primary site after a site failure or network disruption is corrected.
- After a successful migration or takeover of a Secondary RVG, the RVGPrimary agent ensures to automatically start the replication from the new Primary to any additional Secondary(s) that exists in the RDS.
- Before a takeover, the RVGPrimary agent synchronizes the Secondary site with any bunker associated with the Primary site, when the Primary site is not available.

Refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide* for information on configuring the Replication agents for high availability.

A sample configuration file for this agent that you can use as a guide to create the configuration is located at `/etc/VRTSvc/conf/sample_vvr/RVGPrimary`.

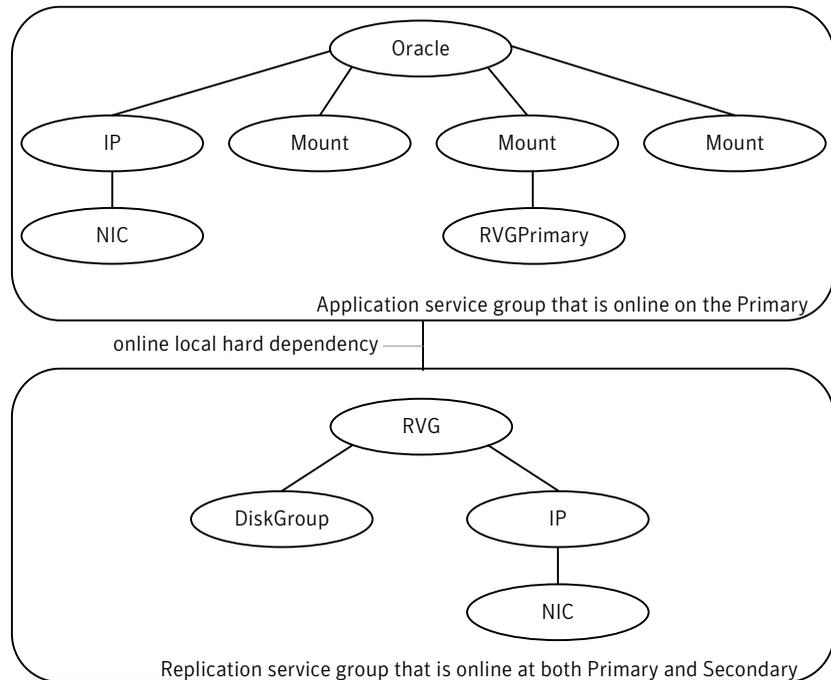
Dependencies

You usually use the RVGPrimary agent in conjunction with the RVG agent in two groups with an online local hard group dependency. The parent group contains the resources that manage the actual application and file systems and as the

RVGPrimary resource. The child group contains the resources managing the storage infrastructure, which include the RVG and DiskGroup type resources.

Refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide* for information about the setup of a VVR environment using the RVGPrimary agent.

Figure 8-2 Sample service group for an RVGPrimary resource



Agent functions

The RVGPrimary agent has the following agent functions:

- Online** Determines the current role of the RVG. If the role is Secondary it attempts a migration. It waits for any outstanding writes from the original Primary. If the original Primary is down, it attempts a takeover. You can configure the RVGPrimary agent so that, before a takeover, the agent synchronizes the Secondary site with any bunker associated with the Primary site, when the Primary site is not available. If the RVG is a Primary, it performs no actions and goes online.
- Offline** Performs no actions.

Monitor	Performs no actions. The RVG agents monitors the actual RVG.
Clean	Performs no actions.
fbsync	This is an action entry point. It resynchronizes the original Primary with the new Primary that has taken over with fast-failback, after the original Primary had become unavailable. This needs to be executed when the original Primary becomes available and starts acting as a Secondary.
ElectPrimary	This is an action entry point. It can be executed to retain the specified RVG as the Primary in a Primary-Primary configuration. For more details, refer to the <i>Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide</i> .

State definitions

The RVGPrimary agent has the following state definitions:

ONLLINE	Indicates that the role of the RVG is Primary.
FAULTED	The RVG agents monitors the actual RVG. Accidental migration of a VVR Primary outside of VCS causes other resources to fault immediately, such as Mount. No special monitoring by this agent is necessary.

Attributes

Table 8-2 Required attributes

Required attributes	Description
RvgResourceName	The name of the RVG resource type that this agent promotes. The name RVG resource type which has been configured using the RVG agent. Type and dimension: string-scalar
AutoTakeover	A flag to indicate whether the agent should perform a takeover on online if the original Primary is down. AutoTakeover and AutoResync are mutually exclusive attributes. When AutoTakeover=0, the primary-elect feature is not applicable; therefore, it is not supported. Type and dimension: integer-scalar

Table 8-2 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attributes	Description
AutoResync	<p>Indicates whether the agent should attempt to automatically perform a fast-failback resynchronization of the original Primary after a takeover and after the original Primary returns.</p> <p>You can use the following values for this attribute:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ 0—instructs the agent to not attempt to perform a fast-failback resynchronization of the original Primary after a takeover and after the original Primary returns.<li>■ 1—instructs the agent to attempt to automatically perform a fast-failback resynchronization of the original Primary after a takeover and after the original Primary returns.<li>■ 2—instructs the agent to use the primary-elect feature. The agent does not attempt to perform a fast-failback resynchronization of the original Primary after a takeover and after the original Primary returns. The RVGPrimary agent also creates space-optimized snapshots for all the data volumes in the RVG resource. <p>If you set the AutoResync attribute to 2 (to enable the primary-elect feature) the value of the BunkerSyncTimeOut attribute must be zero to disable the automated bunker replay feature. You cannot use the automated bunker replay feature and the primary-elect feature in the same environment.</p> <p>AutoTakeover and AutoResync are mutually exclusive attributes.</p> <p>When AutoTakeover=0, the primary-elect feature is not applicable; therefore, it is not supported.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p>

Table 8-2 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attributes	Description
BunkerSyncTimeOut	<p>The value for the BunkerSyncTimeOut attribute determines if you want the bunker to perform a replay or not. You set the value in seconds for the time that you want to allot for the replay.</p> <p>Use one of the following values for the BunkerSyncTimeOut attribute:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ If you do not use a value for this attribute (the default null value), the RVGPrimary agent considers it an infinite timeout value. The agent replays all the writes on the Bunker Replicator Log to the Secondary. Only after the agent sends all the writes, VCS performs the takeover on the Secondary.■ If you set the value for this attribute to 0, you disable bunker replay for the agent. The RVGPrimary agent immediately performs a takeover on the Secondary. The agent does not send pending writes from the Bunker to the Secondary.■ If you set the value to a number of seconds, then the RVGPrimary agent sends writes for that amount of time to the Secondary. After the agent meets the time limit, it performs the takeover on the Secondary. The bunker replay time in this case is equal to the value in seconds. You can set this value dynamically. <p>The RVGPrimary agent's OnlineTimeout and OnlineRetryLimit attribute values determine the available time for an RVGPrimary resource to complete its online operation.</p> <p>Use the following formula to get the Time Available for Online to Complete (TAOC):</p> $\text{TAOC} = (\text{OnlineTimeout} + (\text{OnlineRetryLimit} * \text{OnlineTimeout}))$

Table 8-2 Required attributes (*continued*)

Required attributes	Description
BunkerSyncTimeOut (cont.)	<p>When you set the BunkerSyncTimeOut value in seconds, the value of TAOC for the RVGPrimary agent should be greater than the desired BunkerSyncTimeOut value. Using a TAOC value that is greater than BunkerSyncTimeOut value ensures that the bunker replay and the RVG takeover can complete in the allotted time for that particular online operation. If the TAOC is smaller than BunkerSyncTimeOut value and the bunker replay does not complete within the allotted time for the online process, the resource faults. If the resource faults, clear the fault. Try the online operation again if the resource has not failed over to other cluster node in the configuration.</p> <p>If you increase the value of the BunkerSyncTimeOut attribute, you need to increase the value of the OnlineTimeout or OnlineRetryLimit attribute so that TAOC remain greater than changed value. This is to ensure to have bunker replay completed within allotted time for online.</p> <p>If the value of the AutoResync attribute is 2, you must set the value of the BunkerSyncTimeOut attribute to 0 (to disable automated bunker replay).</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p> <p>Default value: ""</p>

Table 8-3 Internal attribute

Internal attribute	Description
BunkerSyncElapsedTime	<p>For internal use only, do not modify. This value in seconds signifies the amount of time that a Secondary RVG has waited for synchronization from the bunker host to complete.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p>

Resource type definitions

The RVGPrimary resource type definition follows.

```
type RVGPrimary (
    static keylist SupportedActions = { fbsync, electprimary }
    static int NumThreads = 1
    static int OnlineRetryLimit = 1
    static str ArgList[] = { RvgResourceName, "RvgResourceName:RVG",
```

```

    "RvgResourceName:DiskGroup", AutoTakeover, AutoResync,
    BunkerSyncTimeout, BunkerSyncElapsedTime }
    str RvgResourceName
    int AutoTakeover = 1
    int AutoResync = 0
    str BunkerSyncTimeout
    int BunkerSyncElapsedTime = 0
)

```

Sample configurations

```

RVGPrimary rvg-pri (
    RvgResourceName = rvgRes
)

```

RVGSnapshot

For a fire drill, creates and destroys a transactionally consistent space-optimized snapshot of all volumes in a VVR secondary replicated data set. The RVGSnapshot agent takes space-optimized snapshots on a secondary RVG. These snapshots can be mounted and written to without affecting the actual replicated data, which means that the space-optimized snapshot can be an effective tool for scheduling a “fire drill” to confirm that a wide-area failover is possible. By combining this agent with the VCS Mount agent, the CFMount agent, and VCS agents that manage the application being replicated, you can create a special fire drill service group. You can bring this service group online and take it offline at regularly scheduled intervals to verify that the disaster recovery environment is robust.

In addition to the agent itself, a text-based wizard `/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/fdsetup` that prepares the VVR and VCS infrastructure for a fire drill and a script `/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/fdsched` that runs the fire drill and consolidates the results are also included.

Complete details are in the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*.

The RVGSnapshot agent includes the following key features:

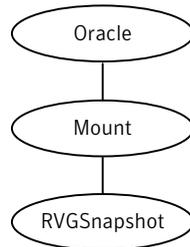
- Automates the process of creating a space-optimized snapshot on a VVR secondary that can be mounted to simulate a wide-area failover without affecting the production application.
- Includes a wizard to effectively set up and schedule fire drills that are completely managed by VCS.

Note: The RVGSnapshot agent does not support Volume Sets.

Dependencies

The RVGSnapshot agent depends on these resources.

Figure 8-3 Sample service group for an RVGSnapshot resource



Agent functions

The RVGSnapshot agent has the following agent functions:

Online	Creates a transactionally consistent snapshot of all volumes in the RVG.
Offline	Destroys the snapshot.
Monitor	No operation; failure of the snapshot will be indicated by the failure of the Mount resource of any file systems mounted on it.
Clean	Cleans up any failed snapshot creation or deletion.

State definitions

The RVGSnapshot agent has the following state definitions:

ONLINE	Indicates that a snapshot was created.
OFFLINE	Indicates that a snapshot was destroyed.
FAULTED	The RVGSnapshot resource faults on timeout if a snapshot creation did not succeed during an online.

Attributes

Table 8-4 Required attributes

Required attributes	Description
RvgResourceName	The name of the VCS RVG-type resource that manages the RVG that will be snapshot by this agent. Type and dimension: string-scalar
CacheObj	Name of the cache object that is required for a space-optimized snapshot; the fdsetup wizard will create one if it does not exist Type and dimension: string-scalar
Prefix	Token put before the name of the actual volume when creating the snapshotted volumes. Type and dimension: string-scalar

Table 8-5 Optional attributes

Optional attributes	Description
DestroyOnOffline	A flag to indicate whether to destroy the snapshot upon taking the resources offline. For a fire drill, the snapshot should be deleted to reduce any performance impact of leaving the snapshot for a long period of time; however, if there is interest in keeping the data, then this value should be set to 0. The default is 1 (true). Type and dimension: integer-scalar Default: 1
FDFile	The fire drill schedule updates this attribute with the system name and the path to a file containing the output of the last complete fire drill for the group containing an RVGSnapshot resource. Type and dimension: string-scalar

Resource type definitions

The resource type definition for the RVGSnapshot agent follows.

```
type RVGSnapshot (
    static keylist RegList = { Prefix }
    static int NumThreads = 1
    static str ArgList[] = { RvgResourceName, CacheObj, Prefix,
```

```
DestroyOnOffline }  
str RvgResourceName  
str CacheObj  
str Prefix  
boolean DestroyOnOffline = 1  
temp str FDFile  
temp str VCSResLock  
)
```

Sample configurations

```
RVGSnapshot rvg-sos (  
    RvgResourceName = ApplicationRVG  
    CacheObj = cacheobj  
    Prefix = snap  
)
```

RVGShared agent

Monitors the RVG in a shared environment. This is a parallel resource. The RVGShared agent enables you to configure parallel applications to use an RVG in a cluster. The RVGShared agent monitors the RVG in a shared disk group environment. The RVGShared agent must be configured as a parallel group in VCS. Typically, the RVGShared resource is online or offline at the same time on all the nodes in the VCS cluster. An example configuration file for this agent that can be used as a guide when creating your configuration is located at `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sample_vvr/RVGLogowner`.

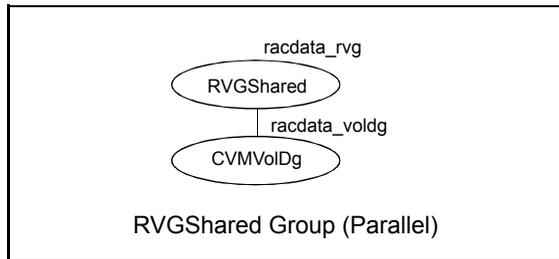
Dependencies

The RVGShared resource represents the RVG of the RDS. The RVGShared resource is dependent on the CVMVolDg resource.

The RVGShared resource must be configured in a parallel group.

Refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide* for information on configuring parallel applications for highly availability.

Refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide* for more information on dependencies.

Figure 8-4 Sample service group for an RVGShared resource

Note: Do not add any volumes that are part of the RVG in the CVMVolume attribute of the CVMVolDg resource. The volumes in the RVG are managed by the RVGShared resource.

Agent functions

The RVGShared agent has the following agent functions:

Online	Verifies whether the RVG is started. If the RVG is not started, recovers and starts the RVG.
Offline	No action.
Monitor	Displays the state as <code>ONLINE</code> if the RVG is started. Displays the state as <code>OFFLINE</code> if the RVG is not started.
Clean	No action.
Info	The info entry point displays information about the replication status of a RDS.

State definitions

The RVGShared agent has the following state definitions:

<code>ONLINE</code>	Indicates that the RVG is in the <code>ENABLED/ACTIVE</code> state.
<code>OFFLINE</code>	Indicates that the RVG is not in the <code>ENABLED/ACTIVE</code> state or that the administrator has invoked the offline entry point.

Attributes

Table 8-6 Required attributes

Required attributes	Description
RVG	The name of the RVG being monitored. Type and dimension: string-scalar
DiskGroup	The shared-disk group with which this RVG is associated. Type and dimension: string-scalar

Resource type definitions

The RVGShared resource type definition follows.

```
type RVGShared (
    static int NumThreads = 1
    static str ArgList[] = { RVG, DiskGroup }
    str RVG
    str DiskGroup
)
```

Sample configurations

```
RVGShared racdata_rvg (
    RVG = rac1_rvg
    DiskGroup = oradatadg
)
```

RVGLogowner agent

Assigns and unassigns a node as the logowner in the CVM cluster; this is a failover resource. The RVGLogowner agent assigns or unassigns a node as a logowner in the cluster. To replicate data, VVR requires network connectivity between the Primary and the Secondary. In a shared disk group environment, only one node, that is, the logowner, can replicate data to the Secondary.

For replication to be highly available, the logowner must be highly available. To make the logowner highly available, the RVGLogowner resource must be configured as a resource in a failover group. Also, a virtual IP must be set up on the logowner to enable replication and failover of the logowner from one node to another in a cluster. The virtual IP must be configured as an IP resource.

For more information about the logowner, see the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide*. An example configuration file for this agent that can be used as a guide when creating your configuration, is located at `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sample_vvr/RVGLogowner`.

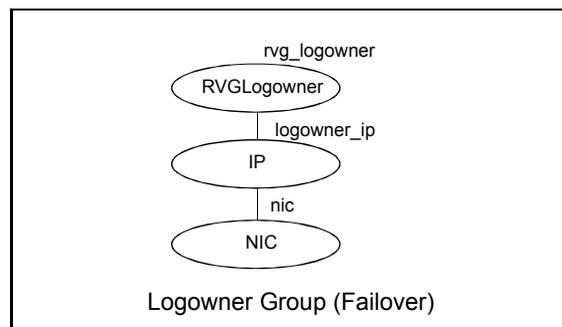
Dependencies

The RVGLogowner resource represents the logowner for RVG in the cluster. The RVGLogowner resource is dependent on the IP resource that it uses for replication.

The RVGLogowner resource must be configured in a failover group. The RVGLogowner group is used in conjunction with the RVGSharedPri and RVGShared agents in separate groups, with the appropriate service group dependencies.

For more information on dependencies, refer to the *Veritas Cluster Server Administrator's Guide*

Figure 8-5 Sample service group for an RVGLogowner resource



Agent functions

The RVGLogowner agent has the following agent functions:

- | | |
|---------|--|
| Online | Assigns the logowner on the node. |
| Offline | Unassigns the logowner on the node. |
| Monitor | Returns <code>ONLINE</code> if the node is the logowner and the RVG is in <code>ENABLED/ACTIVE</code> state. Returns <code>OFFLINE</code> if the node is the logowner and the state is not <code>ENABLED/ACTIVE</code> , or if the node is not the logowner (regardless of the state). The RVG for which the logowner is monitored must be configured as the <code>RVGShared</code> resource type. |
| Clean | Unassigns the logowner on the node. |

State definitions

The RVGLogowner agent has the following state definitions:

- ONLINE Indicates that the node is the logowner for the RVG in the cluster.
- OFFLINE Indicates that the node is not the logowner for the RVG in the cluster.

Attributes

Table 8-7 Required attributes

Required attributes	Description
RVG	The name of the RVG being monitored. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hr_rvg"
DiskGroup	The disk group with which this RVG is associated. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hrbg"

Table 8-8 Internal attributes

Bunker attributes	Description
StorageDG	For internal use only, do not modify. The name of the bunker disk group. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hr_bdg"
StorageRVG	For internal use only, do not modify. The name of the bunker RVG. Type and dimension: string-scalar Example: "hr_brvg"
StorageHostIds	For internal use only, do not modify. A space-separated list of the hostids of each node in the bunker cluster. Type and dimension: string-keylist Example: "bunker_host"

Resource type definitions

The RVGLogowner resource type definition follows.

```
type RVGLogowner (
    static int NumThreads = 1
    static str ArgList[] = { RVG, DiskGroup }
    static int OnlineRetryLimit = 5
    str RVG
    str DiskGroup
    str StorageRVG
    str StorageDG
    str StorageHostIds
)
```

RVGLogowner agent notes

The RVGLogowner agent has the following notes:

CVM master node needs to assume the logowner role for VCS managed VVR resources

If you use VCS to manage RVGLogowner resources in an SFCFSHA environment or an SF Oracle RAC environment, Symantec recommends that you perform the following procedures. These procedures ensure that the CVM master node always assumes the logowner role. Not performing these procedures can result in unexpected issues that are due to a CVM slave node that assumes the logowner role.

For a service group that contains an RVGLogowner resource, change the value of its TriggersEnabled attribute to PREONLINE to enable it.

To enable the TriggersEnabled attribute from the command line on a service group that has an RVGLogowner resource

- ◆ On any node in the cluster, perform the following command:

```
# hagrps -modify RVGLogowner_resource_sg TriggersEnabled PREONLINE
```

Where *RVGLogowner_resource_sg* is the service group that contains the RVGLogowner resource.

To enable the preonline_vvr trigger, do one of the following:

- If preonline trigger script is not already present, copy the preonline trigger script from the sample triggers directory into the triggers directory:

```
# cp /opt/VRTSvcs/bin/sample_triggers/VRTSvcs/preonline_vvr  
/opt/VRTSvcs/bin/triggers/preonline
```

Change the file permissions to make it executable.

- If preonline trigger script is already present, create a directory such as /preonline and move the existing preonline trigger as T0preonline to that directory. Copy the preonline_vvr trigger as T1preonline to the same directory.
- If you already use multiple triggers, copy the preonline_vvr trigger as TNpreonline, where TN is the next higher TNumber.

Sample configurations

```
RVGLogowner vvr_rvglogowner (  
    RVG = app_rvg  
    DiskGroup = vvrldg  
)
```

RVGSharedPri agent

Attempts to migrate or takeover a Secondary to a Primary when a parallel service group fails over. The RVGSharedPri agent enables migration and takeover of a VVR replicated data set in parallel groups in a VCS environment. Bringing a resource of type RVGSharedPri online causes the RVG on the local host to become a primary if it is not already. The agent is useful when hosts in both the primary and secondary side are clustered using a VCS global cluster, to completely automate the availability of writable replicated disks to an application managed by VCS.

You cannot use the primary-elect feature with this agent. For a detailed description of the primary-elect feature, see *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide*.

The RVGSharedPri agent includes the following key features:

- Removes manual steps of migrating a VVR primary and secondary roles when failing over applications across a wide area.
- Minimizes the need for resynchronizing replicated volumes by attempting a migration before attempting a hard takeover.
- Waits for the two sides of a replicated data set to become completely synchronized before migrating roles.
- Supports an automatic fast failback resynchronization of a downed primary if it later returns after a takeover.

Sample configuration files are located in the `/etc/VRTSvcs/conf/sample_rac/` directory and include CVR in the filename. These sample files are installed as part of the VRTSdbac fileset, and can be used as a guide when creating your configuration.

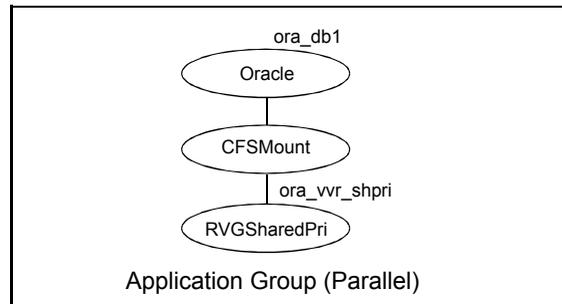
Dependencies

The RVGSharedPri agent is used in conjunction with the RVGShared and RVGLogowner agents in separate groups, with the appropriate service group dependencies.

Refer to the *Veritas Storage Foundation and High Availability Solutions Replication Administrator's Guide* for information on configuring parallel applications for highly availability.

The RVGSharedPri agent must be configured in a parallel service group. The application service group contains the resources managing the actual application and file systems as well as the RVGSharedPri agent.

Figure 8-6 Sample service group for an RVGSharedPri resource



Agent functions

The RVGSharedPri agent has the following agent functions:

Online	Determines the current role of the RVG; if Secondary, attempt a migrate, waiting for any outstanding writes from the original Primary; if the original Primary is down attempt a takeover; if the RVG is a Primary, perform no actions and go online
Offline	Performs no actions.
Monitor	Performs no actions; monitoring of the actual RVG is done by the RVGShared agent.
Clean	Performs no actions.

fbsync	<p>This is an action entry point.</p> <p>It resynchronizes the original Primary with the new Primary that has taken over with fast-failback, after the original Primary had become unavailable.</p> <p>This needs to be executed when the original Primary becomes available and starts acting as a Secondary.</p>
resync	<p>This is an action entry point.</p> <p>It resynchronizes the Secondaries with the Primary using DCM.</p>

State definitions

The RVGSharedPri agent has the following state definitions:

FAULTED	Monitoring of the actual RVG is done by the RVGShared agent; accidental migration of a VVR Primary outside of VCS would cause other resources to fault immediately, such as Mount, so no special monitoring by this agent is necessary.
---------	---

Attributes

Table 8-9 Required attributes

Required attributes	Description
RvgResourceName	<p>The name of the RVGShared resource type that this agent will promote, that is, the name RVG resource type which has been configured using the RVGShared agent.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>
AutoTakeover	<p>A flag to indicate whether the agent should perform a takeover on online if the original Primary is down.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 1</p>
AutoResync	<p>A flag to indicate whether the agent should attempt to automatically perform a fast-failback resynchronization of the original Primary after a takeover and after the original Primary returns.</p> <p>Type and dimension: integer-scalar</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
VCSResLock	<p>This attribute is reserved for internal use by VCS.</p> <p>Type and dimension: string-scalar</p>

Resource type definitions

The RVGSharedPri resource type definition follows.

```
type RVGSharedPri (  
    static keylist SupportedActions = { fbsync, resync }  
    static int NumThreads = 1  
    static int OnlineRetryLimit = 1  
    static str ArgList[] = { RvgResourceName, "RvgResourceName:RVG",  
        "RvgResourceName:DiskGroup", AutoTakeover, AutoResync }  
    str RvgResourceName  
    int AutoTakeover = 1  
    int AutoResync = 0  
    temp str VCSResLock  
)
```

Sample configurations

```
RVGSharedPri ora_vvr_shpri (  
    RvgResourceName = racdata_rvg  
    OnlineRetryLimit = 0  
)
```

Index

Symbols

802.1Q trunking 86

A

about

Network agents 85

Samba agents 154

agent

modifying 18

agent functions 152

Apache HTTP server agent 169

Application agent 181

CoordPoint agent 192

DiskGroup agent 23

DiskGroupSnap agent 34

DNS agent 124

ElifNone agent 242

FileNone agent 244

FileOnOff agent 246

FileOnOnly agent 248

IP agent 88

IPMultiNIC agent 98

IPMultiNICB agent 111

LVMVG agent 54

MemCPUAllocator agent 208

Mount agent 68

MultiNICA agent 102

MultiNICB agent 117

NetBIOS agent 163

NFS agent 141

AIX 141

NFSRestart agent 146

NIC agent 93

NotifierMngr agent 222

Phantom agent 232

Process agent 197

ProcessOnOnly agent 201

Proxy agent 229

RemoteGroup agent 234

SambaServer agent 156

SambaShare agent 160

agent functions *(continued)*

Share agent 152

Volume agent 48

VolumeSet agent 51

Zone agent 204

agents. *See* RVG agent

Apache HTTP server 167

Application 180

CoordPoint 191

DiskGroup 22

DiskGroupSnap 32

DNS 123

ElifNone 241

FileNone 243

FileOnOff 245

FileOnOnly 247

IP 87

IPMultiNIC 97

IPMultiNICB 110

LVMVG 53

MemCPUAllocator 208

Mount 67

MultiNICA 101

NetBIOS 162

NFS 140

NFSRestart 145

NIC 92

NotifierMngr 221

Phantom 231

Process 196

ProcessOnOnly 200

Proxy 228

RemoteGroup 233

RVGLogowner. *See* RVGLogowner agent

RVGPrimary. *See* RVGPrimary agent

RVGShared. *See* RVGShared agent

RVGSharedPri. *See* RVGSharedPri agent

RVGSnapshot. *See* RVGSnapshot agent

SambaServer 156

SambaShare 160

Share 151

Volume 48

- agents (*continued*)
 - Zone 203
- Apache HTTP server agent
 - agent functions 169
 - attributes 170
 - description 167
 - detecting application failure 176
 - sample configuration 177
 - state definitions 169
- Application agent
 - agent functions 181
 - AIX attributes 184
 - attributes 184
 - description 180
 - high availability fire drill 180
 - resource type definition 187
 - sample configurations 190
 - state definitions 184
- association dimension 18
- attribute data types 18
- attributes
 - Application agent 184
 - AIX 184
 - CoordPoint agent 194
 - DiskGroup agent
 - AIX 26
 - DiskGroupSnap agent 35
 - DNS agent 126
 - ElifNone agent 242
 - FileNone agent 244
 - FileOnOff agent 247
 - FileOnOnly agent 249
 - IP agent
 - AIX 89
 - IPMultiNIC agent 99
 - AIX 99
 - IPMultiNICB agent 112
 - AIX 112
 - modifying 18
 - Mount agent 71
 - AIX 71
 - MultiNICA agent 103, 209
 - MultiNICB agent 117
 - NFS agent 142
 - AIX 142
 - NFSRestart agent 148
 - AIX 148
 - NIC agent 94
 - AIX 94

- attributes (*continued*)
 - NotifierMngr agent 222
 - AIX 222
 - Process agent 198
 - AIX 198
 - ProcessOnOnly
 - AIX 202
 - ProcessOnOnly agent 202
 - Proxy agent 229
 - RemoteGroup agent 235
 - SambaServer agent 157
 - Share agent 153
 - AIX 153
 - Volume agent 49
 - VolumeSet agent 52
- AutoResync attribute
 - RVGPrimary agent 271

B

- boolean data types 18

C

- Checklist to ensure the proper operation of
 - MultiNICB 109
- Cluster Manager (Java Console)
 - modifying attributes 18
- CNAME record 135
- configuration files
 - main.cf 232
 - modifying 18
 - types.cf 18
- CoordPoint agent
 - agent functions 192
 - attributes 194
 - description 191
 - resource type definition 194
 - sample configurations 195
 - state definitions 193

D

- data type
 - boolean 18
 - string 18
- data types
 - integer 18
- dependency graphs
 - RVGLogowner agent 266
 - RVGPrimary agent 254

dependency graphs (*continued*)

- RVGShared agent 263
- RVGSharedPri agent 270

description

- resources 18

dimensions

- keylist 18
- scalar 18
- vector 18

DiskGroup agent

- agent functions 23
- AIX attributes 26
- description 22
- high availability fire drill 30
- resource type definition 29
- sample configurations 32
- state definitions 25

DiskGroupSnap agent

- agent functions 34
- attributes 35
- description 32
- resource type definition 41
- sample configurations 41
- state definitions 34

DNS agent 125

- agent functions 124
- attributes 126
- description 123
- resource type definition 132
- sample web server configuration 135

E

ElifNone agent

- agent functions 242
- attributes 242
- description 241
- resource type definition 243
- sample configuration 243
- state definitions 242

F

failover group

- RVGLogowner agent 265

fast failback

- AutoResync attribute of RVGPrimary 271

fast failback resynchronization

- RVGPrimary 254
- RVGSharedPri 269

Fiber Channel adapter 31

FileNone agent

- agent functions 244
- attribute 244
- description 243
- resource type definition 245
- sample configurations 245
- state definitions 244

FileOnOff agent

- agent functions 246
- attribute 247
- description 245
- state definitions 246

FileOnOnly agent

- agent functions 248
- attribute 249
- description 247
- resource type definition 249
- sample configuration 249
- state definitions 248

fire drill

- RVGSnaphot agent 260

H

haipswitch utility 111

- AIX 111

high availability fire drill 30, 78, 87, 92, 135, 149, 180, 197

I

integer data types 18

IP agent

- agent functions 88
- AIX attributes 89
- description 87
- high availability fire drill 87
- resource type definitions 90
- sample configurations 91
- state definitions 88

IPMultiNIC agent

- agent functions 98
- AIX attributes 99
- attributes 99
- description 97
- resource type definitions 100
- sample configuration 100
- state definitions 98

- IPMultiNICB agent 115
 - agent functions 111
 - AIX attributes 112
 - attributes 112
 - description 110
 - requirements 111
 - resource type definition 114
 - state definitions 112

K

- keylist dimension 18

L

- logowner
 - virtual IP requirement 265
- LVMVG agent
 - agent functions 54
 - attributes 56
 - autoactivate options 63
 - description 53
 - hadvice utility 65
 - importing volume group 61
 - JFS 61
 - JFS or JFS2 support 61
 - JFS2 61
 - major numbers 62
 - resource type definition 58
 - sample configurations 66
 - state definitions 55
 - Subsystem Device Driver support 64
 - SyncODM attribute 62
 - varyonvg options 61
- LVMVG notes 58

M

- main.cf 18, 232
- main.xml 18
- MemCPUAllocator agent
 - agent functions 208
 - description 208
- migrating
 - RVGPrimary 254
 - RVGSharedPri 269
- modifying
 - configuration files 18
- modifying agents 18
- monitor scenarios
 - DNS agent 135

- Mount agent
 - agent functions 68, 70
 - AIX attributes 71
 - attributes 71
 - description 67
 - high availability fire drill 78, 135, 149
 - notes 77
 - offline 82
 - resource type definition 76
 - sample configurations 83
- MultiNICA agent 107
 - agent functions 102
 - attributes 103, 209
 - description 101
 - resource type attributes 106
 - resource type definitions 210
 - sample configurations 107
 - state definitions 103
- MultiNICB agent 117
 - agent functions 117
 - attributes 117
 - resource type definition 121
 - sample configurations 122
 - state definitions 117

N

- NetBIOS agent
 - agent functions 163
 - description 162
 - resource type definition 164
 - sample configurations 166
 - state definitions 163
- NFS agent
 - agent functions 141
 - AIX 141
 - attributes 142
 - AIX 142
 - description 140
 - resource type definition 143
 - sample configurations 144
 - state definitions 142
- NFSRestart agent
 - agent functions 146
 - attributes 148
 - AIX 148
 - description 145
 - resource type definition 148
 - sample configuration 150
 - state definitions 147

- NIC agent
 - agent functions 93
 - attributes 94
 - AIX 94
 - description 92
 - high availability fire drill 92
 - resource type definitions 95
 - sample configurations 96
 - state definitions 93
- noautoimport flag 31
- Notes on using NFSv4 144
- NotifierMngr agent
 - agent functions 222
 - AIX attributes 222
 - attributes 222
 - description 221
 - resource type definition 225
 - sample configurations 226
 - state definitions 222

O

- offline
 - Mount agent 82
- online query 135

P

- parallel group
 - RVGShared agent 263
- Phantom agent
 - agent functions 232
 - description 231
 - resource type definition 232
 - sample configurations 232
- prerequisites
 - Samba agents 155
- Process agent
 - agent functions 197
 - AIX attributes 198
 - attributes 198
 - description 196
 - high availability fire drill 197
 - resource type definition 199
 - sample configurations 199
 - state definitions 198
- ProcessOnOnly agent
 - agent functions 201
 - AIX attributes 202
 - attributes 202

- ProcessOnOnly agent (*continued*)
 - description 200
 - resource type definition 202
 - sample configurations 203
 - state definitions 201
- Proxy agent
 - agent functions 229
 - attributes 229
 - description 228
 - resource type definition 230
 - sample configurations 230

R

- RemoteGroup agent
 - agent functions 234
 - attributes 235
 - description 233
 - resource type definition 240
 - state definitions 234
- resource type definition 50
 - SambaShare agent 161
- resource type definitions
 - Application agent 187
 - CoordPoint agent 194
 - DiskGroup agent 29
 - DiskGroupSnap agent 41
 - DNS agent 132
 - ElifNone agent 243
 - FileNone agent 245
 - FileOnOnly agent 249
 - IP agent 90
 - IPMultiNIC agent 100
 - IPMultiNICB agent 114
 - LVMVG agent 58
 - Mount agent 76
 - MultiNICA agent 106, 210
 - MultiNICB agent 121
 - NetBIOS agent 164
 - NFS agent 143
 - NFSRestart agent 148
 - NIC agent 95
 - NotifierMngr agent 225
 - Phantom agent 232
 - Process agent 199
 - ProcessOnOnly agent 202
 - Proxy agent 230
 - RemoteGroup agent 240
 - SambaServer agent 159
 - Share agent 153

resource type definitions *(continued)*

- Volume agent 50
- Zone agent 206

resources

- description of 18

RVG agent

- described 250

RVGLogowner agent

- dependency graph 266
- described 265
- failover group 265

RVGPrimary agent

- dependency graph 254
- described 254
- migrating 254
- takeover 254

RVGShared agent

- dependency graph 263
- described 263
- parallel group 263

RVGSharedPri agent

- dependency graph 270
- described 269
- migrating 269
- takeover 269

RVGSnapshot agent

- described 260
- fire drill 260

S

Samba agents 154

- overview 154
- prerequisites 155

SambaServer agent

- agent functions 156
- attributes 157
- description 156
- resource type definition 159
- sample configuration 159
- state definitions 157

SambaShare agent 160

- agent functions 160
- attributes 161
- resource type definition 161
- sample configurations 162
- state definitions 161

sample configurations 115

- Apache HTTP server agent 177
- Application agent 190

sample configurations *(continued)*

- CoordPoint agent 195
- DiskGroup agent 32
- DiskGroupSnap agent 41
- ElifNone agent 243
- FileNone agent 245
- FileOnOff agent 247
- FileOnOnly agent 249
- IP agent 91
- IPMultiNIC 100
- IPMultiNICB agent 115
- LVMVG agent 66
- Mount agent 83
- MultiNICA agent 107
- MultiNICB agent 122
- NetBIOS agent 166
- NFS agent 144
- NFSRestart agent 150
- NIC agent 96
- NotifierMngr agent 226
- Phantom agent 232
- Process agent 199
- ProcessOnOnly agent 203
- Proxy agent 230
- SambaServer agent 159
- SambaShare agent 162
- Share agent 154
- Volume agent 50

scalar dimension 18

secure DNS update 136

Share agent 152

- agent functions 152
- attributes 153
 - AIX 153
- description 151
- resource type definitions 153
- sample configurations 154
- state definitions 152

snapshots

- using RVGSnapshot agent for 260

State definitions

- VolumeSet agent 51

state definitions 125

- Apache HTTP server agent 169
- Application agent 184
- CoordPoint agent 193
- DiskGroup agent 25
- DiskGroupSnap agent 34
- DNS agent 125

state definitions (*continued*)

- ElifNone agent 242
- FileNone agent 244
- FileOnOff agent 246
- FileOnOnly agent 248
- IP agent 88
- IPMultiNIC agent 98
- IPMultiNICB agent 112
- LVMVG agent 55
- Mount agent 70
- MultiNICA agent 103
- MultiNICB agent 117
- NetBIOS agent 163
- NFS agent 142
- NFSRestart agent 147
- NIC agent 93
- NotifierMngr agent 222
- Process agent 198
- ProcessOnOnly agent 201
- RemoteGroup agent 234
- SambaServer agent 157
- SambaShare agent 161
- Share agent 152
- Volume agent 49

string data type 18

T

takeover

- RVGPrimary 254
- RVGSharedPri 269

trigger script 121

trunking 86

types.cf 18

V

varyoffvg command 60

VCS

- resource types 18

vector dimension 18

virtual IP

- RVGLogowner agent requirement 265

Volume agent

- agent functions 48
- attributes 49
- description 48
- sample configurations 50
- state definitions 49

volume sets 31

VolumeSet agent

- agent functions 51
- attributes 52
- State definitions 51

Z

Zone agent

- agent functions 204
- attributes 205
- description 203
- resource type definition 206